

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 931N.

- For proper handset use, read this guide.
- Keep this guide in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 931N is compatible with 3G, GSM and WLAN (wireless LAN) network technologies.

Notes

- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Content of this guide is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-57) about unclear or missing information.

Before Using This Guide

- SoftBank 931N is referred to as “handset” in this guide.
 - Most operation descriptions are based on default settings and begin in Standby.
 - Sample screenshots* are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
 - Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.
 - “(Japanese)” appears next to functions or services which require Japanese ability to use.
- * Standby Display used in this guide is based on SoftBank 931N Black model. Design theme of Main Menu and windows is based on default setting *Tower*.

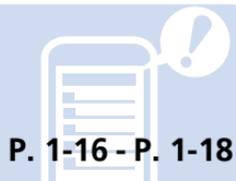
	Getting Started	1
	Basic Operations	2
	Calling	3
	Security	4
	Mail	5
	Internet	6
	Camera	7
	TV	8
	Music Player & S! Appli	9
	Entertainment	10
	Tools	11
	Data Management	12
	Connectivity	13
	Customization	14
	Appendix	15

Search Guide

● Function & Service Name Search

Table of Contents	P. viii
Menu List	P. 15-20
Index	P. 15-43

● Display Indicators



● Learning Basics

P. 2-2 - P. 2-9

● Solving Problems

Troubleshooting	P. 15-6
Warranty & After Sales Service	P. 15-56

● Objective Search



Mastering
Basics

My Number &
E-mail Address

Customizing
Handset

931N Features

SoftBank Mobile
Features

<p>Basic Operations</p> <p>Learn basic menu navigation and key operations.</p> <p>P. 2-2</p>	<p>Text Entry</p> <p>Enter text for composing messages, creating Phone Book entries, etc.</p> <p>P. 2-12</p>	<p>Messaging Services</p> <p>Use S! Mail or SMS to send text messages. Attach and send files via S! Mail.</p> <p>P. 5-2</p>	<p>Mobile Internet</p> <p>Use Yahoo! Keitai to access Mobile Internet sites tailored for SoftBank customers.</p> <p>P. 6-2</p>
<p>My Phone Number</p> <p>Check your phone number on handset.</p> <p>P. 1-30</p>	<p>My Account Details</p> <p>Save your contact information to Account Details to send it to your friends.</p> <p>P. 1-30</p>	<p>Customize E-mail Address</p> <p>Change the account name (part before @) of your e-mail address.</p> <p>P. 14-15</p>	<p>Exchange Information Wirelessly</p> <p>Send your e-mail address to compatible devices via infrared.</p> <p>P. 13-2</p>
<p>Download Music</p> <p>Download songs from Chaku-Uta® sites and set as ringtones or play back on Music Player.</p> <p>P. 9-4</p>	<p>Set Ringtones</p> <p>Set your favorite songs as ringtones.</p> <p>P. 14-8</p>	<p>Wallpaper</p> <p>Set your favorite image to appear in Standby with clock or calendar.</p> <p>P. 14-3</p>	<p>Add Shortcuts</p> <p>Add frequently used functions to Desktop Icons.</p> <p>P. 2-4</p>
<p>Music Player</p> <p>Download songs and play them on handset.</p> <p>P. 9-2</p>	<p>Camera & Video Camera</p> <p>Shoot still images and videos.</p> <p>P. 7-2</p>	<p>TV</p> <p>Handset supports One Seg Digital TV.</p> <p>P. 8-2</p>	<p>Osaifu-Keitai®</p> <p>Use your handset for payment of purchases with electronic money or as a commuter ticket or point card.</p> <p>P. 11-2</p>
<p>Yahoo! Keitai Sites</p> <p>A special portal site for SoftBank handsets enhances your Internet browsing experience.</p> <p>P. 6-3</p>	<p>Graphic Mail</p> <p>Create HTML messages by changing font and background colors, inserting images, etc.</p> <p>P. 5-4</p>	<p>Gaming Device</p> <p>Play S! Appli games downloaded from Yahoo! Keitai sites.</p> <p>P. 9-8</p>	<p>S! Quick News</p> <p>Subscribe to News and receive automatic updates regularly.</p> <p>P. 10-5</p>

Intellectual Property Rights

- Duplicating, modifying or publicly transmitting copyright-protected contents (e.g. text, images, music, software) photographed or downloaded from websites without the permission of the copyright holders is prohibited by copyright laws, with the exception that the duplication or quotation of those is made only for personal use.

Shooting or recording a demonstration, performance or exhibition may be prohibited in some cases even if it is for personal use.

Shooting a photo of a person using this product without his or her permission, or posting a photo of a person you shot on websites without his or her permission may constitute an infringement of portrait rights.

- Mobile Widget, S! Appli, S! Mail and Graphic Mail are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- SOFTBANK, SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese and the SOFTBANK logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.
- Yahoo! and the "Yahoo!" or "Y!" logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc. in the U.S.
- Osaifu-Keitai[®] is a registered trademark of NTT DOCOMO.
- T9[®] is trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.
- The microSD[™] logo and microSDHC[™] logo are trademarks.



- Wi-Fi[®], Wi-Fi Alliance[®], Wi-Fi logo and Wi-Fi CERTIFIED logo are trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance.
- Wi-Fi CERTIFIED[™], WMM[™], WPA[™], WPA2[™] and Wi-Fi Protected Setup[™] are trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance.
- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and you are permitted to use personally and for the nonprofit purpose in the following situations:
 - To record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (MPEG-4 Video)
 - To play MPEG-4 Video recorded by the consumer engaged in the nonprofit activities
 - To play MPEG-4 Video provided by the provider licensed by MPEG-LA

When you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.

- This product contains Adobe[®] Flash[®] Lite[™] and Adobe[®] Reader[®] LE technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated.



This product contains Adobe[®] Flash[®] Lite[™] and Adobe[®] Reader[®] LE software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Adobe Flash Lite Copyright© 1996-2009 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.

Adobe Reader LE Copyright© 1984-2009 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.

Adobe, Adobe Reader, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered

trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002 - 2009 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved. JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.



- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



- Chaku-Uta® and Chaku-Uta® Full are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc. in Japan and/or other countries.

- Machi-Uta™ is a trademark of KDDI CORPORATION.

- This product contains NetFront Mobile Client Suite of ACCESS CO., LTD.



ACCESS, ACCESS logo and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in the United States, Japan and other countries.

©2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

- This product is equipped with NetFront Document Viewer by ACCESS CO., LTD. as document viewer function. ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.

- This product is equipped with IrFront by ACCESS CO., LTD.



©2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.

ACCESS and IrFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.

- Bluetooth and the Bluetooth logo are registered trademarks of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. NEC Corporation is granted a license for their use from Bluetooth SIG, Inc. Other trademarks and names belong to their respective owners.



- Neuropointer, Touch Style, Share Style, Communication Style, Multitask, Emotion-Expressing Mail, Privacy Angle, Life History Viewer, Quick Info, Desktop info, Quick Album, フォト文字 Touch, Word Prediction, Tomo-Den, Tomomato-Mail BOX and FontAvenue are trademarks or registered trademarks of NEC Corporation.

- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ MASCOT CAPSULE® are registered trademarks of HI CORPORATION.

- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.

- IrSimple™, IrSS™ or IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of Infrared Data Association®.



- Hyper Clear Voice is commercially available based on the license for SRS VIP+ technology from SRS Labs, Inc. SRS, VIP+, and the  symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.

Intellectual Property Rights

- TruMedia and Dialog Clarity technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.
Trumedia, Dialog Clarity, SRS and the  symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.
For more details, visit “GPL・LGPL等について” at <http://www.n-keitai.com/guide/download/>
- FrameSolid™ by Morpho, Inc. is used for the frame interpolation function.
FrameSolid™ is a registered trademark of Morpho, Inc.
- PhotoSolid®, MovieSolid®, QuickPanorama™ and their logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Morpho, Inc. in Japan and other countries.
- ImageSurf™ by Morpho, Inc. is used for the rapid image display technique.
ImageSurf™ is a registered trademark of Morpho, Inc.
- This product is equipped with the font FontAvenue product by NEC Corporation.
- BookSurfing is a registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc., and INFOCITY, Inc.
-  is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- モバイルSuica is a registered trademark of East Japan Railway Company.
- Edy is a pre-paid electronic money service brand managed by bitWallet, Inc.
- Microsoft, PowerPoint, Excel, Windows, Windows Media and Windows Vista are trademarks or registered trademarks in the United States or other countries of Microsoft Corporation (USA).
- Microsoft Windows Operating System is indicated in its abbreviated form as Windows.
- OS (Japanese) are abbreviated as follows in this guide.
 - Windows Vista is an abbreviation of Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, Ultimate).
 - Windows XP is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
 - Windows 2000 is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- This product is antibacterial-coated.
Antibacterial part: Handset body (excluding Display, keys and terminals)
Inorganic antimicrobial agent, coating: JP0122112A0003N
The SIAA logo indicates the quality control and information disclosure for this product conform to the guidelines of the Society of Industrial Technology for Antimicrobial Articles, as a result of evaluations conducted under ISO 22196.
- AOSS™ is a trademark of Buffalo Inc.



- ©ATR-Trek Co., Ltd.
- ©赤塚不二夫／びえろ
- ©TOMY
- ©2006 タカラトミー /KL/H
- ©SUGAR
- TM&©2008 Felix the Cat Productions, Inc. All Rights Reserved
- ©DAIKIN.H.T., 2000
- ©T2i Entertainment
- The other company names and brand names described in this guide are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

Table of Contents

Before Using This Guide	i
Search Guide	ii
Intellectual Property Rights.....	iv
Table of Contents.....	viii
Package Contents.....	x
Safety Precautions	xi
General Notes.....	xix

1 Getting Started

Handset Parts.....	1-2
Touch Panel.....	1-9
Neuropointer	1-15
Display.....	1-16
USIM Card	1-19
Battery & Charger.....	1-22
Power On/Off	1-26
Mobile Manners	1-28
Codes.....	1-29
Other Basic Information.....	1-30

2 Basic Operations

Menu Operations	2-2
Multitask.....	2-10
Text Entry.....	2-12
Phone Book.....	2-20
S! Addressbook Back-up.....	2-27
Advanced Features.....	2-29

3 Calling

Overview.....	3-2
Voice Call.....	3-3
Video Call	3-8
Call Logs	3-11
Speed Dialing.....	3-13
Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming).....	3-15
Optional Services.....	3-16
Advanced Features	3-18

4 Security

PIN Settings.....	4-2
Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use.....	4-3
Prohibiting Outgoing/Incoming Calls	4-6
Secret Modes	4-7

5 Mail

Overview.....	5-2
Sending Messages.....	5-3
Receiving & Opening Messages	5-6
Handling Messages	5-9
Advanced Features	5-15

6 Internet

Overview.....	6-2
Yahoo! Keitai	6-3
PC Site Browser.....	6-6
Page Operations	6-10
Bookmarks & Saved Pages.....	6-13
Advanced Features	6-16

7 Camera

Overview	7-2
Capturing Still Images	7-6
Recording Videos	7-9
Various Features	7-12
Advanced Features	7-16

8 TV

About TV	8-2
Watching TV.....	8-6
Recording/Playing Programs.....	8-11
View/Record Timer	8-14
Advanced Features	8-16

9 Music Player & S! Appli

About Music Player.....	9-2
Music Playback.....	9-5

S! Appli.....	9-8
Advanced Features.....	9-10

10 Entertainment

Mobile Widget.....	10-2
S! Quick News.....	10-5
S! Info Channel.....	10-6
Books.....	10-8
Advanced Features.....	10-9

11 Tools

Osaifu-Keitai®.....	11-2
S! GPS Navi.....	11-5
Life History Viewer.....	11-7
Schedule.....	11-9
To Do List.....	11-12
Text Memo.....	11-14
Voice Memo.....	11-15
Calculator.....	11-16
Alarm.....	11-17
Bar Code Reader.....	11-19
Text Reader.....	11-21
Advanced Features.....	11-24

12 Data Management

About Data Folder.....	12-2
Accessing Files.....	12-3
Editing Files.....	12-10
File & Folder Management.....	12-12
About Memory Card.....	12-13
Managing Memory Cards.....	12-14
Advanced Features.....	12-17

13 Connectivity

Infrared.....	13-2
Bluetooth®.....	13-5
PC Connection.....	13-9
WLAN.....	13-11
Advanced Features.....	13-16

14 Customization

Clock, Display & Sounds.....	14-2
Phone Book & Calls.....	14-11
Mail.....	14-15
Internet.....	14-18
TV.....	14-20
Camera.....	14-22
Player & S! Appli.....	14-23
Entertainment.....	14-24
Other Settings.....	14-26

15 Appendix

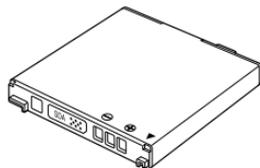
Multitask Combinations.....	15-2
Software Update.....	15-4
Troubleshooting.....	15-6
Text Entry Key Assignments.....	15-10
Kuten Code List.....	15-13
Weather Indicators.....	15-19
Menu List.....	15-20
Specifications.....	15-38
Index.....	15-43
Warranty & After Sales	
Service.....	15-56
Customer Service.....	15-57

Package Contents

The following items are included in the package with handset.

For additional information on accessories, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-57).

■ Battery (NEBAN1)



■ Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (NELAH1)



■ Starter Guide

■ Warranty (Handset)

■ Protective Sheet (Sample)

- SoftBank 931N supports microSD™ and microSDHC™ memory cards. Purchase a memory card to use related functions.
- Use only specified AC charger (sold separately) to charge handset.

Safety Precautions

- To ensure proper use of your handset, read these safety precautions carefully before use. Keep this guide for future reference.
- Observe these safety precautions to prevent injuries and damages to property.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for any loss or damages incurred by you or a third party as a result of missed calls, etc., due to malfunction, erroneous operation or failure of this product.

■ Labels

- Risks of injury or damage from improper use are categorized by levels. Understand these labels before reading this guide.

 DANGER	Great risk of death or serious injury ¹ from improper use
 WARNING	Risk of death or serious injury ¹ from improper use
 CAUTION	Risk of injury ² or damage to property ³ from improper use

- 1 Serious injury includes: Loss of eyesight, physical injury, high temperature burns, low temperature burns (blisters or reddening caused by prolonged contact with a heat source higher than body temperature), electric shock, fractures, poisoning and other conditions requiring hospitalization or long-term treatment.

- 2 Injury includes: Physical burns (high-temperature and low-temperature), electric shock, and other conditions not requiring hospitalization or long-term treatment.
- 3 Damage to property includes: Incidental damage to structures and household property and/or to pets and livestock.

■ Symbols

- Make sure you understand the following symbols and precautions before reading this guide.

	Action is prohibited.
	Disassembly is prohibited.
	Exposure to liquids is prohibited.
	Handling with wet hands is prohibited.
	Action is compulsory.
	Unplug power cord.

Safety Precautions

- **Handset, Battery, USIM Card, AC Charger (Sold Separately), Desktop Holder (Sold Separately), Memory Card (Not Included), and Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable**

DANGER

	Use SoftBank specified devices (Battery, AC Charger or Desktop Holder) only. Use of non-specified devices may cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause Charger to overheat, ignite or malfunction.
	Do not disassemble/modify/solder handset. May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Also, Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite. Modification of handset equipment violates statutory regulations and is subject to penalty.
	Keep liquids away from handset. If handset and/or battery is not dried after exposure to fluids (water, pet urine etc.), overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, etc. may occur.
	Do not charge, use or leave handset in places subject to high temperatures (near an open flame or heating equipment, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day). May cause deformation or malfunction; or may cause Battery to leak, overheat, ignite or rupture. Also, the outer housing may become hot resulting in burns.



Do not use excessive force to attach Battery, AC Charger or Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable to handset. Battery or AC Charger may be the wrong way around.

Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.

WARNING



Do not place handset, Battery, AC Charger, Desktop Holder or Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable in a microwave oven or pressure cooker, or on top of an induction heating (IH) cooktop.

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause handset, AC Charger or Desktop Holder to overheat, emit smoke, ignite or malfunction.



Turn off handset when entering gas stations or other places where flammable gases (propane gas, gasoline, etc.) generate. Do not charge battery in such places.

Gases may ignite. Before using Osaifu-Keitai® inside a gas station, be sure to turn handset off. (If IC card lock is activated, first deactivate it and turn power off.)



Do not drop or throw handset or expose it to excessive shock.

May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



If you notice an unusual sound, odor, smoke, etc. while using, charging or storing handset, immediately:

1. Unplug AC Charger from outlet.
2. Turn handset power off.
3. Remove Battery from handset, being careful of burn or injury.

Continued use may cause fire or electric shock.



Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) and conductive materials (e.g. pencil lead, metal fragments, metal necklaces, hairpins, etc.) away from Charger Terminals, External Device Port or Memory Card Slot.

May cause short circuit, resulting in fire or malfunction.



CAUTION



Do not place handset on an uneven or unstable surface.

Handset may fall, leading to injuries or handset malfunction. Be particularly careful while charging or when vibrator is activated.



Keep handset out of reach of infants.

Failing to do so may result in small parts being accidentally swallowed or may cause injury.



When a child uses handset, parent supervision is advised. Provide child with proper instructions.

Failing to do so may cause injury, etc.



Do not store handset in humid or dusty places or in places subject to high temperatures.

May cause malfunction.

■ Handling Battery



DANGER

- **Check battery type on Battery label. Properly use and dispose of Battery according to type.**

Label	Battery type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion



Do not throw Battery into a fire.

May cause Battery to leak, rupture or ignite.



Do not puncture Battery with a nail, hit it with a hammer, step on it or subject it to strong impact.

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.



Keep metal objects (pins, etc.) away from Battery Terminals. Do not carry or store conductive materials (e.g. pencil lead, metal fragments, metal necklaces, hairpins, etc.) together with Battery.

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.



If battery fluid gets into eyes, immediately rinse with clean water and consult a doctor. Do not rub eyes.

Failing to do so may result in loss of eyesight.

WARNING

	If battery fluid gets on your skin or clothing, immediately stop handset use and rinse with clean water. Battery fluid may harm your skin.
	If Battery is not fully charged even after specified charging time, stop charging. Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.
	If you notice an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration, deformation, etc. while using, charging or storing Battery, remove it from handset and keep it away from fire. Be careful not to burn or injure yourself. Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.
	If Battery leaks or emits an unusual odor, immediately stop using it and keep it away from fire. Battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing fire or Battery to rupture.
	If any abnormalities (deformation, scratches, etc.) are visible on Battery, immediately discontinue use. May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture, ignite; may cause handset malfunction or fire.
	Do not allow pets to bite Battery. May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture, ignite; may cause handset malfunction or fire.

CAUTION

	Do not dispose of batteries as municipal waste. Bring used batteries to the nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape. Be sure to observe local regulations on battery disposal.
---	--

■ Handling Handset

WARNING

	Do not use while operating a vehicle (car, motorcycle, bicycle, etc.) May cause a traffic accident. Use of a mobile phone while driving is prohibited by law, and is subject to penalty. Stop vehicle in a safe location (where parking is allowed) before using handset.
	Keep handset power off near high precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals. Handset may cause these devices to malfunction. Devices that may be affected: Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.
	Keep handset power off aboard an aircraft. Handset signal may interfere with aircraft operation. Handset use aboard an aircraft may be subject to penalty. When in-flight use is permitted, observe airline instructions.

	If you have a weak heart, be careful with incoming call vibrator and ringtone volume settings. These may affect your heart.
	If thunder is heard while outside, retract Antenna, immediately turn handset power off and seek shelter. Failing to do so may attract lightning and cause electric shock.
	Do not point infrared beam at a person's eyes. May cause eye injury.
	Do not turn on Light near a person's eyes. Light may affect eyesight. Do not photograph infants too closely.
	Do not turn on Light and point it at drivers and cyclists. Doing so may cause a traffic accident.
	If you use electronic medical equipment, do not place handset in breast pocket or inner coat pocket. Using handset near electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.
	When using Earphone-Microphone while playing games or music, adjust volume accordingly. Sound at high volume may impair hearing; or surrounding sounds may become inaudible over playback volume, resulting in an accident.
	Do not place handset on the dashboard near airbags. In case of airbag inflation, handset may hit passengers resulting in injury, malfunction or breakage.

	If Display or Camera Lens is damaged, be careful of broken glass pieces or exposed internal components. Shatter-proof film prevents Display and Camera lens from shattering; however glass fragments and components may cause injury.
	Do not allow fluids, metal pieces or flammable materials to enter USIM Card Slot or Memory Card Slot. May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

CAUTION

	If skin abnormality occurs with use of handset, immediately discontinue use and consult a doctor. Handset contains metals. Depending on your physical condition, you may experience itchiness, rash, etc.
	Keep magnetic cards away from handset. Failing to do so may cause magnetic data on a cash card, credit card, telephone card or floppy disk to be lost.
	Do not swing handset by Antenna, Strap, etc. Handset may strike you or people around you, or the Strap may break, resulting in injury, malfunction or breakage.
	Use caution when using handset for an extended period; handset may become hot. Skin contact for extended period may cause low-temperature burns.

Safety Precautions

	Do not bring speaker close to the ear when making calls in handsfree mode or when ring tone/melody is playing. May impair your hearing.
	Be careful not to pinch your fingers, palm or Strap when opening or closing handset. May cause injury or damage.
	Watch TV with adequate lighting and distance from Display. Failing to do so may impair eyesight.
	Do not turn volume up too high when using earphones. Using earphones for extended periods at high volume may impair hearing or harm your ears.
	If Display breaks, do not inhale or touch liquid crystal fluid. If fluid enters your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse with clean water and consult a doctor. If fluid adheres to your skin or clothing, immediately wipe off with alcohol and wash with soap and water. May result in loss of eyesight or skin damage.
	Do not use in crowded locations. Antenna may hit other persons causing injury.
	Do not use Antenna if broken. May cause burns or injuries upon skin contact.
	Keep magnetized objects away from handset. May cause operation errors.

■ Handling USIM Card

CAUTION

	Be careful handling the Notch when removing USIM Card. May injure your hands or fingers.
---	--

■ Handling AC Charger and Desktop Holder

WARNING

	Do not cover with clothing or bedding during charging. Heat may build up resulting in fire or malfunction.
	Use the specified power supply and voltage. Failing to do so may cause fire or malfunction. AC Charger: 100 to 240 V AC (for household AC outlets only) Also, do not use commercially available voltage converters. May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.
	Unplug AC Charger from outlet before extended periods of handset disuse. Failing to do so may cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.
	If liquid (water, pet urine, etc.) gets into AC Charger, immediately unplug AC Charger from outlet. Failing to do so may cause electric shock, smoke emission or fire.

	If dust accumulates on AC Charger plug, unplug Charger from outlet and wipe with a dry cloth. Failing to do so may cause fire.
	When plugging AC Charger into outlet, keep conductive materials (pencil lead, metal parts, necklaces, hair pins, etc.) away from Desktop Holder terminals, AC Charger plug/terminals and plug Charger firmly into outlet. Failing to do so may cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.
	Do not touch AC Charger with wet hands. May cause electric shock or malfunction.
	If thunder is heard, do not touch AC Charger. May cause electric shock.
	Do not use AC Charger if the cord is damaged. May cause electric shock, overheating or fire.
	Do not use AC Charger and Desktop Holder in humid places such as in bathrooms. May cause electric shock.
	Do not short-circuit Charger Terminals when Charger is plugged into an outlet. Do not touch Charger Terminals with your fingers, etc. May cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury.
	Do not place heavy objects on the cord of AC Charger. May cause electric shock or fire.

CAUTION

	When AC Charger is connected to an outlet, do not pull on cord or otherwise subject Charger to strong shock. May cause injury or malfunction.
	Firmly hold plug and unplug AC Charger from outlet before cleaning. Failing to do so may cause electric shock.
	Do not unplug AC Charger by pulling the cord. Firmly hold plug and unplug AC Charger. Pulling the cord may damage the cord resulting in electric shock or fire.
	Do not charge a wet battery. May cause battery to overheat, ignite or rupture.
	Unplug Charger from outlet when charging is complete. Failing to do so may cause fire or malfunction.
	Do not touch Charger Terminals of Desktop Holder when plugged into an AC outlet. May cause low-temperature burns.

Safety Precautions

■ Near Electronic Medical Equipment

- This section is based on “Guidelines on Safeguarding Medical Equipment from Electromagnetic Waves from Mobile Phones and Other Devices” (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, April 1997), and “Research Report on the Influence of Electromagnetic Waves on Medical Equipment” (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

WARNING



If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, carry and use handset at a distance of at least 22 centimeters away from the implanted area.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.



When using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers/defibrillators outside of medical institutions, consult device manufacturer about the influence of radio waves.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of electronic medical equipment.



Observe the following in medical institutions. Radio waves from handset may affect electronic medical equipment.

- Do not bring mobile phones into an operating room, ICU (Intensive Care Unit) or CCU (Coronary Care Unit).
- Turn off mobile phones in hospital wards. Disable auto power-on functions (alarm, etc.) before turning off mobile phones.
- Turn off mobile phones even in lobbies or areas where use is permitted if there is electronic medical equipment nearby.
- Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions and do not use or bring mobile phones into prohibited areas.



Keep handset power off in crowded places such as rush hour trains; a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby. Disable auto power-on functions (alarm, etc.) before turning off mobile phones.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.

General Notes

Usage Basics

- Handset use may be disrupted when outside the service area or where signals are weak. Calls/TV image may be suddenly cut off when moving to a place with poor signal reception (e.g. inside/next to a tall building, in a tunnel, underground or in mountainous areas).
- Take care not to disturb other people when using handset in public places.
- If you receive a call while walking, move to a safe place before answering.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages arising from loss or alteration of data (Phone Book, image/sound files, etc.) stored on your handset or memory card as a result of accident or malfunction. Back up important data such as Phone Book entries.
- Handset is a wireless station under Japanese Radio Law. You may be requested to submit your handset for inspection based on this law.
- Using handset near a landline phone, TV or radio may affect the operation of these devices. Use handset as far away as possible from these devices.
- Be aware of eavesdropping. Handset employs a digital signal that provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the possibility of eavesdropping by a third party using special means cannot be ruled out.
<Eavesdropping>
Interception of radio signals by a third party during communication, either intentionally or accidentally
- Using handset on trains or other public transportation may affect their electronic devices.
- A call may not be connected or you may hear noises:
 - In an extremely cold place (e.g. freezer storehouse) where handset may not operate normally
 - Near metal furniture which may interfere with signal transmission
 - Near electromagnetic sources or magnetized items, including electric products, audio-visual equipment and office appliances (e.g. computer, microwave oven, speaker, TV set, radio, fax machine, fluorescent lamp, word processor, electric kotatsu, inverter-driven air conditioner, electromagnetic cooker)
- If Battery appears deformed or scratched from external impact, contact Customer Assistance.
- When using handset for the first time or after an extended period of disuse, charge Battery beforehand.
- Battery operating time varies by the usage environment and Battery condition.
- Do not charge Battery:
 - In a humid/dusty place or near sources of vibration
 - Near a landline phone, TV or radio
- Although AC Charger may become warm while charging, it is not a malfunction.

General Notes

- Do not subject handset to excessive shock. Do not deform Charger Terminals. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- When Battery life nears its end, it may expand slightly. This is not a malfunction.
- FeliCa reader/writer uses the unlicensed 13.56 MHz frequency. Maintain sufficient distance between other reader/writers in use nearby. Make sure mobile phones or other wireless stations operating at the same frequency are not nearby.
- Keep handset away from strong magnetic force. May cause malfunction.
- Do not scratch Display with metal objects, etc. Doing so may damage Display resulting in malfunction or breakage.
- When handset is open, a gap forms between the Display backside and Keypad side. Keep foreign objects and liquids (water, metal fragments, flammable materials or any other foreign objects) from entering gap. May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

Inside Cars

- Do not use handset while driving. Doing so may compromise safe driving and cause an accident. Handset operation in a car may be punishable by law.
- Before using handset, stop the car in a safe place.
- Handset use may affect electronics in some car models. Confirm with your car dealer whether sufficient magnetic protection measures are implemented in your car. Failing to do so may compromise safe driving.

Handling

- Keep away from liquids and moisture. Handset, Battery, AC Charger, Desktop Holder, Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable and USIM Card are not waterproof. Do not use these devices in the rain or in other humid places (e.g. bathrooms). When carrying handset near your body (pockets, etc.), moisture from sweat may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction. Damage caused by exposure to liquids/moisture is not covered by the warranty and may be irreparable.
- Handset's color LCD may be treated with special coating for enhanced visibility. To avoid scratching Display, clean handset carefully using a dry, soft cloth (e.g. eyeglass cloth). If moisture or soil is left on Display, the coating may stain or peel off. Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene or detergent, as it may cause discoloration and remove printed logos.
- Clean Terminals with a dry cotton swab. Soiled Terminals may cause poor contact, resulting in insufficient charging or handset to turn off.
- Do not place handset near an air conditioner vent. Condensation may form due to abrupt temperature changes, leading to internal corrosion and malfunction.

- Do not apply excessive force to handset and Battery. Placing handset in an overpacked bag or sitting down with handset in your pocket may damage Display, Internal Circuit Board or Battery, and cause malfunction. Doing so with external device connected to External Device Port may damage connector, leading to malfunction.
- Although handset becomes warm during use or charging, it is not a malfunction.
- Do not leave the Camera Lens exposed to direct sunlight. Doing so may discolor or burn Optical Element.
- Do not affix thick stickers or labels to the Display or Keypad side. Doing so may result in malfunction.
- Do not leave Battery uninstalled or uncharged for an extended period of time; may alter or erase saved settings and data. SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages resulting from such loss or alteration.
- Do not store depleted Battery; may degrade performance and shorten Battery life.
- Keep the covers of External Device Port and Memory Card Slot closed. Dust or water inside handset may cause malfunction.
- When removing Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or AC Charger from External Device Port, do not pull the cord, hold the connector. Pulling the cord may result in wire breakage or malfunction.
- If you use an outlet with pullout prevention feature, refer to the instruction manual of the outlet.
- Avoid extremely cold and high temperatures. Use handset at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35 °C, and humidity of 45 to 85 %. If handset is left in an extremely hot place, handset may power off automatically.
- Battery is a consumable item. Operating time varies by conditions of use; however when operation time becomes extremely short even after a full charge, purchase a new Battery. Use only specified battery.
- Charge Battery at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35 °C.
- FeliCa reader/writer complies with Japanese wireless standards. Usage while abroad may be subject to penalty.
- Handset's IC Card authentication complies with and has obtained certification for Japanese wireless standards. Usage while abroad may be subject to penalty.
- Do not insert USIM Card with labels or stickers affixed to it. May cause malfunction.
- When connecting an external device, do not insert connector into External Device Port at an angle. When external device is connected, do not pull the cord.
- Do not use handset without Battery Cover. Battery may dislodge and result in malfunction or breakage.
- Do not attach labels or stickers to the backside of handset Display. Labels or stickers may catch when opening/closing handset, causing malfunction or breakage.

Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable

- Do not force connector into External Device Port. Connector may be the wrong way around. Check direction of connector before inserting to avoid damage.
- Do not expose Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable to excessive shock or throw it at something.
- Do not place heavy objects on Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable.
- Beware of use while driving a vehicle. Using a mobile phone is subject to penalty. If it is necessary to receive a call, use handsfree mode to inform caller you will call back. Park the vehicle in a safe location to return the call.

Camera

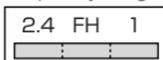
Creating public disturbances from using handset may be subject to penalties based on applicable laws and regulations (e.g. nuisance prevention ordinance by municipal governments).

Earpiece/Speaker

Put the earpiece to the ear only for accepted/outgoing calls. Otherwise, handset sounds can damage your ears.

Bluetooth®

- Handset's Bluetooth® function complies with and has obtained certification for Japanese wireless standards. You may be subject to penalty if used abroad.
- Handset incorporates a security function compliant with Bluetooth® standards for security with Bluetooth® communication. However, security may be insufficient depending on such factors as settings. Care is required for communication using Bluetooth®.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for leak of data or information during communication using Bluetooth®.
- Frequency range



Bluetooth® device uses the 2.4 GHz frequency range. It employs the FH-SS modulation system, and has a maximum interference range of 10 m. It is not capable of avoiding the frequency range used by RFID systems.

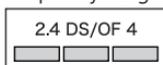
- Bluetooth® devices share the same frequency band with; licensed in-house radio stations (in factory production lines), specific unlicensed low power radio stations, licensed amateur radio stations (hereafter, "other radio stations") and scientific, medical or industrial devices (including microwave ovens).

- 1 Make sure no other radio stations are operating nearby.
- 2 If handset interferes with an in-house radio station, immediately change the frequency of the Bluetooth® device, move to another place or cancel the Bluetooth® function, and contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center (see below).
- 3 If interference with a low power radio station or amateur radio station occurs, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center.
From a SoftBank handset: 157 (toll-free)
From landlines: See P. 15-57 for Customer Service.

Wireless LAN

- Handset's wireless LAN function complies with and has obtained certification for Japanese wireless standards. You may be subject to penalty if used abroad.
- Do not use near magnetic devices (e.g. electrical appliances, audio-visual devices, office equipment, etc.) or sources of electromagnetic waves.
 - May cause noise or prevent connection (especially when using a microwave oven).
 - May interfere with device reception (TV, radio, etc.) or affect TV picture.
 - Target LAN access point may not be found when several access points sharing the same channel are available nearby.

- Frequency range



WLAN device uses the 2.4 GHz frequency range. It employs the DS-SS and OFDM modulation systems, and has a maximum interference range of 40 m. It is capable of avoiding the frequency range used by RFID systems.

- 2.4 GHz device precautions

WLAN devices share the same frequency band with; licensed in-house radio stations (in factory production lines), specific unlicensed low power radio stations, licensed amateur radio stations (hereafter, "other radio stations") and scientific, medical, or industrial devices (including microwave ovens).

- 1 Make sure no other radio stations are operating nearby.
 - 2 If handset interferes with an in-house radio station, immediately change frequency or cancel WLAN, and contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center (see below).
 - 3 If interference with a low power radio station or amateur radio station occurs, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center.
From a SoftBank handset: 157 (toll-free)
From landlines: See P. 15-57 for Customer Service.
- For use in an aircraft, contact the airline beforehand.

Touch Panel

Do not press Touch Panel with excessive force or use sharp objects (finger nail, ballpoint pen, pin, etc.). May damage panel.

Copyrights

Copyrighted materials, such as music, images, computer programs and databases, and their respective copyright holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplication of copyrighted materials is permitted only for individual or home use. Duplications (including data conversion), modifications, transfers or network distributions of copyrighted materials for purposes other than stated above without permission of the copyright holders constitute an infringement of copyrights and violation of copyright holders' rights, potentially causing claims for reparations or criminal punishment.

Always observe applicable copyright laws when making copies using handset and recording materials using handset camera.

The software installed in this handset is a copyrighted material and involves copyrights and human rights of copyright holders which are protected by copyright laws. Do not duplicate, modify, alter, detach from the hardware, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software in whole or in part by yourself, nor allow any third party to do the same, either.

Functional Limitations

After handset upgrade, subscription cancellation or long periods of handset disuse, TV becomes unavailable.

Caution

Do not use handset if it has been altered. Using an altered device is a violation of the Radio Law.

This handset is certified to conform to the technical standards for specific radio equipment based on the Radio Law, and Technical Conformity Mark  is printed on the model name seal as certification. If you remove screws and make alterations inside of handset, the technical standards conformity certification becomes invalid. Do not use handset with the certification invalid, as it is a violation of the Radio Law.

SAR Certification Information

931N meets the technical standards set by the Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.

These technical standards have been established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to a human head from affecting human health. These standards require that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average radio frequency energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissible value of 2 W/kg*. This value includes a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

* The technical standards are stipulated in the Radio Law (Article 14-2 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).

The highest SAR value is 0.164 W/kg for 931N. This value was obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with handset transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in SAR levels among individual products, they all meet the MIC's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power level required to communicate with base stations, the actual SAR of handset during a call is usually below the highest value.

For more information about SAR, see the following websites:

- Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC)
<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm>
- Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)
<http://www.arib-emf.org/> (Japanese)

SoftBank's Body SAR Policy

- Body SAR: Value obtained from continuously talking with handset placed on the body using earphone-microphone at maximum transmission power.
- Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): Value obtained from talking continuously for six minutes.
- Placement on the body: Measurements are taken with the rear of handset facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the standard handset position. In order to comply with radio frequency exposure requirements, use an accessory (e.g. belt clip, holster) that does not contain metallic parts to maintain a 1.5 cm separation between the body and handset.

For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (Japanese):

<http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/ja/info/public/emf/emf02.html>

FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC Information to User

931N has been tested and found to comply with the limits of a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio or TV technician for help.

FCC RF Exposure Information

931N is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organization through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The influence on the human body of radio waves emitted from mobile phones is measured employing a unit known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg. The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g. at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model.

The maximum SAR value for this model handset when tested for use at the ear is 0.274 W/kg and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.451 W/kg.

Body-worn Operation; this device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of handset. The use of belt clips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly. Non-compliance with the above restrictions may result in violation of FCC RF Exposure guidelines.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of <https://gulfoss2.fcc.gov/oetcf/eas/reports/GenericSearch.cfm> after searching on FCC ID A98-7N4S13A.

Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website:

<http://www.phonefacts.net>.

European RF Exposure Information

931N is a radio transmitter and receiver. This product has been confirmed not to exceed the limits recommended by international guidelines for radio frequency.

These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) and include a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The influence on the human body of radio waves emitted from mobile phones is measured employing a unit known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg. The maximum SAR value for this model handset, when placed on the ear, is 0.317 W/kg. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in SoftBank's Body SAR Policy. In this case, the maximum SAR value is 0.462 W/kg*.

Since the SAR is measured at the highest transmitting power level, the actual SAR during a call is usually much lower. This is because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power levels necessary to communicate with base stations.

The World Health Organization (WHO) has stated that present scientific information about mobile phone use does not indicate any adverse effects on the human body. They recommend limiting the talking time or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body to reduce influence of exposure to radio waves.

Additional information can be found at the WHO website:

<http://www.who.int/emf>

* Measurements with handset placed on the body are carried out in accordance with the FCC standards. The values are based on European requirements.

Declaration of Conformity

CE 0168

931N is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2.

The Declaration of Conformity can be found on the following website:

<http://www.n-keitai.com/>

Minding Mobile Manners

Use your handset responsibly. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Getting Started

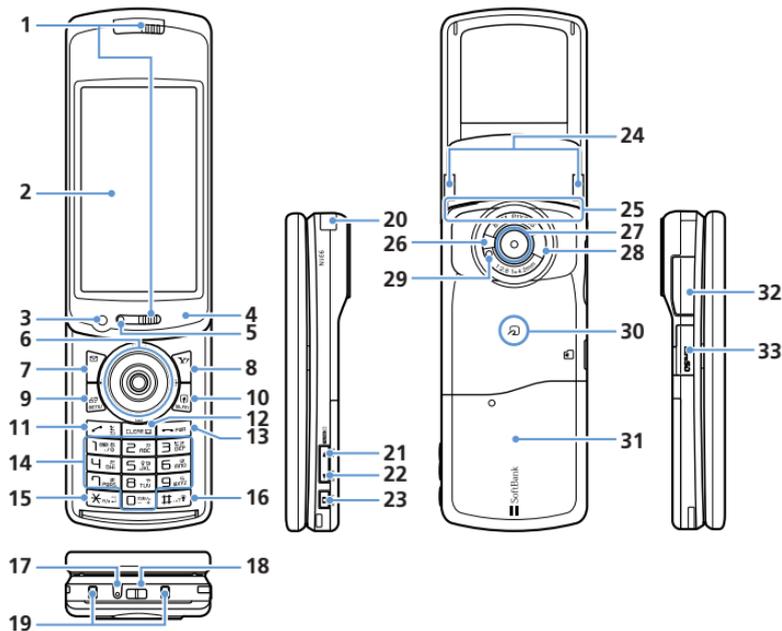
Handset Parts	1-2	Power On/Off	1-26
Basic Key Operations.....	1-3	Power On.....	1-26
Display Positions.....	1-6	Power Off.....	1-26
Touch Panel	1-9	Mobile Manners	1-28
Using Touch Panel.....	1-9	Activating Manner Mode.....	1-28
Swipe.....	1-12	Codes	1-29
Using Softkey Labels.....	1-12	Security Code.....	1-29
Touchkeys.....	1-13	Center Access Code.....	1-29
Undo/Return to Standby.....	1-14	Network Password.....	1-29
Neuropointer	1-15	Other Basic Information	1-30
Using Neuropointer.....	1-15	Checking Battery Level.....	1-30
Display	1-16	My Phone Number.....	1-30
Display Indicators.....	1-16	Checking Network Status.....	1-30
Mobile Widget (Japanese).....	1-17	Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable.....	1-30
USIM Card	1-19	Using WLAN.....	1-31
Before Using USIM Card.....	1-19	Using ECO Mode.....	1-32
Other Notes on USIM Cards.....	1-19		
USIM PINs.....	1-20		
USIM Card Installation.....	1-21		
Battery & Charger	1-22		
Notes on Charging Battery.....	1-22		
Battery Installation.....	1-22		
Charging Battery.....	1-24		

1

Handset Parts

1

Getting Started



- 1 Earpiece/Stereo Speaker
- 2 Display/Touch Panel
- 3 Front Camera
- 4 Charging Indicator
- 5 Light Sensor
- 6 Multi Selector  & 
- 7 Mail Key 
- 8 Yahoo! Keitai Key 
- 9 Menu Key 
- 10 Shortcut Key 
- 11 Send Key 
- 12 Clear/Back Key 
- 13 Power/End Key 
- 14 Keypad 
- 15 *Key 
- 16 # /Manner Key 
- 17 Microphone
- 18 Strap Eyelet
- 19 Charger Terminals
- 20 TV Antenna
- 21 Volume up/Manner Key 
- 22 Volume down/WLAN Key 
- 23 Camera/Lock Key 
- 24 Illumination
- 25 Internal Antenna
- 26 Light
- 27 Rear Camera

- 28 Infrared Port
- 29 Camera Indicator
- 30 FeliCa Mark
- 31 Battery Cover
- 32 External Device Port
- 33 Memory Card Slot

Tip

- Because Earpiece also acts as a speaker, put the earpiece to the ear only for accepted/outgoing calls. Otherwise, handset sounds can damage your ears.
- Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.
- For optimal signal reception, do not cover Internal Antenna with hands or anything else. Do not affix stickers over Internal Antenna.

Basic Key Operations

In Standby (Communication Style/Share Style)

No.	Key/Operations	Description
6		Access widgets.
	Press and hold 	Open S! Quick News List.
		Open Phone Book Search menu.
		Open Received Calls window.
	Press and hold 	Open Received Address List.
		Open Redial window.
	Press and hold 	Open Sent Address List.
		Access Desktop Icons/Indicators. Use Neuropointer to move pointer.
	Press and hold 	Searches and connects to user-set WLAN access point (Set WLAN function on beforehand) (P. 13-14).
7		Open Mail menu.
	Press and hold 	Compose a new message.
8		Access Yahoo! Keitai portal.
	Press and hold 	Open Yahoo! menu.
9		Open Main Menu.

No.	Key/Operations	Description
10		Activate function assigned to key.
	Press and hold	Set WLAN ON or OFF .
11		Open Tomo-Den Window.
12		Play messages on Answering Machine.
	Press and hold	Set/cancel Answering Machine.
13	Press and hold	Turn power on/off.
14	Press and hold	Display current location using GPS function.
	Press and hold	Set/cancel IC Card Lock.
	Press and hold	Set/cancel ECO Mode.
	Press and hold	Set font type, thickness and size.
	Press and hold	Set Privacy Angle on/off.
	Press and hold	Enter "+“ (international access code).
16	Press and hold	Set/cancel Manner Mode.
21		Increase earpiece volume.
	Press and hold	Set/cancel Manner Mode.
22		Decrease earpiece volume.
	Press and hold	Set WLAN ON or OFF .
23	Press and hold	Activate Camera in Photo Mode.

In Standby (Touch Style)

No.	Key/Operations	Description
21		Open Touch Menu.
22	Press and hold	Set WLAN ON or OFF .
23		Set Keypad Lock.
	Press and hold	Activate Camera in Photo Mode.

During Voice Calls

No.	Key/Operations	Description
6		Open Phone Book Search Group menu.
	Press and hold	Continuously increase earpiece volume.
		Open Phone Book Search Column menu.
	Press and hold	Continuously decrease earpiece volume.
		Open Received Calls window.
		Open Redial window.
7		Turn handsfree on/off.
8		Toggle Hyper Clear Voice modes (High, OFF or Low).
9		Open Task Switch window.
10		Display function menu.

No.	Key/Operations	Description
12		Hold call.
13		End call.
	Press and hold	Turn power off.
16	Press and hold	Set/cancel Manner Mode.
30		Increase earpiece volume.
31		Decrease earpiece volume.
	Press and hold	Record other party's voice.

During Text Entry

No.	Key/Operations	Description
6		Insert line feed ↵ (when cursor is at the end of text).
		Add a space (when cursor is at the end of text).
7		Toggle character entry modes (in 5-touch or T9 input mode). Toggle double-byte and single-byte characters (in 2-touch mode).
7	Press and hold	Toggle text input methods (in 5-touch, 2-touch or T9 input mode).

No.	Key/Operations	Description
8		Open pictograph/symbol lists.
	Press and hold	Access My Pictograms (in S! Mail).
11		Cycle characters in reverse order (in 5-touch mode).
	Press and hold	Undo last operation (conversion, pasting, cut, etc.) and return to the previous state.
12		Delete one character to right of cursor. When cursor is at end of text, a character to left is deleted.
	Press and hold	Delete all text to right of cursor. When cursor is at end of text, delete all text.
15		Enter dakuten (゛) or handakuten (゜) (in 5-touch, 2-touch or T9 input mode). Toggle case (in 5-touch or 2-touch mode). Insert line feed ↵.
	Press and hold	Select area.
16		Toggle Shift, Caps Lock and lower case modes (when entering alphanumerics in T9 input mode).
	Press and hold	Paste copied or cut text.

Display Positions

Use following Display positions according to handset use (P. 2-2 to P. 2-4).

Communication Style

Make calls, browse the Internet, configure settings, etc.



Share Style

Use Display in Landscape View or Split Landscape View for TV or Internet browsing.



Touch Style

Use Touch Panel to operate TV, Camera, etc. with handset closed.

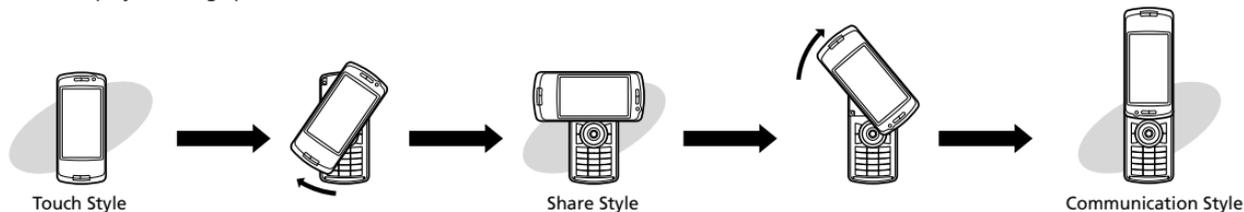


Tip

- Unless indicated otherwise, key operation is described in Communication Style.
- Set Keypad Lock when handset is closed, to prevent unintentional Touch Panel or Side Key operation (P. 4-4).
- Set the handset operation when changing Styles (P. 14-28).

Changing Display Position

Rotate Display to change positions.



Note

- Do not rotate Display with excessive force. Doing so may scratch or damage handset. When rotating Display, be careful not to pinch fingers, palm or Strap; may cause injury or damage.

Functions in Each Style

Available functions and Display views vary by Display position.

● For details on activating each function, see P. 2-2.

Display Position	Display View	Available Functions
Communication Style	Portrait View	All functions
Share Style	Landscape View	Standby, PC Site Browser, Camera, TV, My Picture, Videos
	Split Landscape View	Mail (opening new messages, composing messages only), Yahoo! Keitai, TV, etc.
Touch Style	Portrait View	Standby, mail (opening new messages, opening manually retrieved messages only), Yahoo! Keitai, PC Site Browser, Phone, Music Player, etc.
	Landscape View	Camera, TV, My Picture, Videos, Quick Album, Music Player (video only)

Split Landscape View

In Landscape View, some functions appear in split-window format.

<Inbox/Received Message>



Main Window

Sub Window

Note

- Open Mail functions while TV is active. For other functions, only menus within the same function appear in Split Landscape View.

Tip

- In Touch Style, the following operations are unavailable.
 - Text Entry
 - Operations with widgets
- Touch operations not supported for S! Quick News ticker.

More Features

Customize

Touch Panel

- Set Touch Panel On/Off for Each Style
- Set Vibrator Operation during Touch Operation

(▶ P. 14-27)

Share Style

- Wallpaper
- Show Calendar in Standby
- Set Random Display of Images
- Clock Size

(▶ P. 14-27)

Style Change

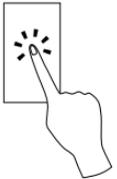
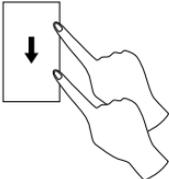
- Set to Answer Calls By Opening Handset
- Set Sound at Style Change
- Set Flashing Color for Style Change Illumination

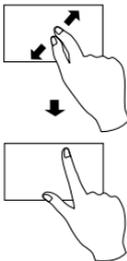
(▶ P. 14-28)

Using Touch Panel

Touch Display to select items, scroll pages, etc.

- Touch Panel is unavailable when Display backlight is off. Press Side Keys to turn backlight on when handset closed.
- When handset is open, use Touch Panel or keypad for handset operations. However, Touch Panel may be unavailable for some functions. (ex. text entry, Calculator, etc.).
- Customize Touch Panel settings (sound, Vibrator, etc.) (P. 14-10, P. 14-27).

	Tap Tap Display to open windows or execute Softkey function, etc.
	Drag Touch and drag target item to change volume, scroll menu, etc.

	Swipe Swipe finger across Display to see previous or next items.
	Pinch Pinch or pinch apart your fingers to reduce or enlarge the subject.

Note

- Do not press Touch Panel with excessive force or use sharp objects (fingernail, ballpoint pen, pin, etc.).
- Touch Panel may not respond when
 - Wearing gloves
 - Using fingernails
 - Objects are placed on Display
 - Protective sheet or sticker is affixed to Display

Basic Operations

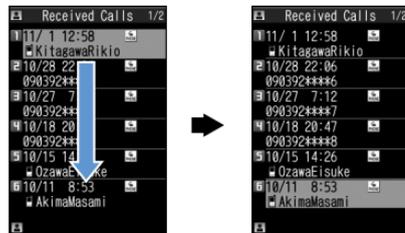
Selecting an Item

1 Tap an item



Scrolling

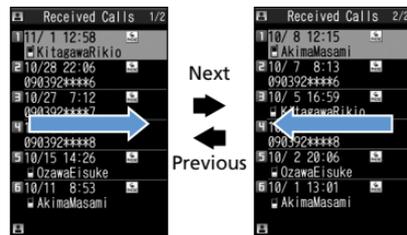
1 Drag up or down



Toggle Pages

When content/items continue onto multiple pages, scroll to view next/previous pages.

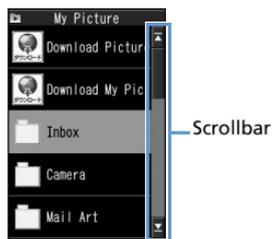
1 Swipe to the left or right



Using Scrollbar

Use Scrollbar in Music, My Picture, Videos and TV and other folder/file lists.

1 Drag Scrollbar up or down

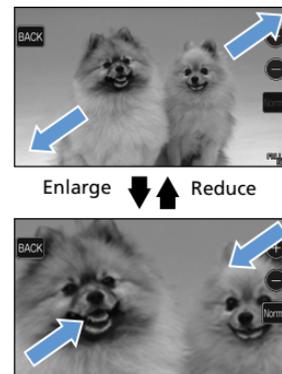


Tap  /  to jump to top/bottom of list.

Enlarging/Reducing

Enlarge or reduce pages or images in PC Site Browser, My Picture, etc.

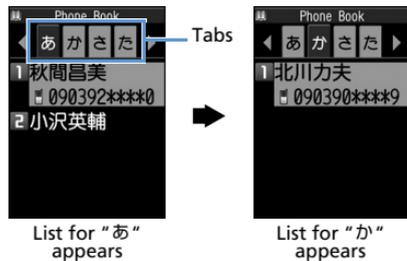
1 Pinch apart to enlarge



■ To Reduce
Pinch to reduce.

Selecting Tabs

1 Tap tab to select



Canceling Keypad Lock

To cancel Keypad Lock, drag Scrollbar at bottom of Display or tap icon.



Security Code not set



Security Code set

Tip

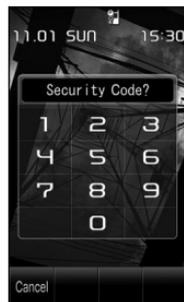
- For information about Keypad Lock, see P. 4-4.

Entering Security Code

Use Touch Keypad to enter Security Code.

1 Enter the four to eight digit Security Code then tap **Set**

- **●** appears for each digit entered. To correct misentries, tap **←** to delete a character at a time.



Tip

- An error notification appears if Security Code is incorrect. Enter Security Code again.
- For information about Security Code, see P. 1-29.

Using Touch Operation Icons

Tap icons at left and right of Display for operations. Icons differ according to the activated function. Touch Operation Icons are available when Camera is activated (P. 7-4) and Picture window is open (P. 12-4).



Picture Window (Touch Style)

Using Pallet

Tap Display or Touchkeys to activate Pallet. Pallet gathers Keys for carrying out settings and adjustments into one place. Use Pallet when:

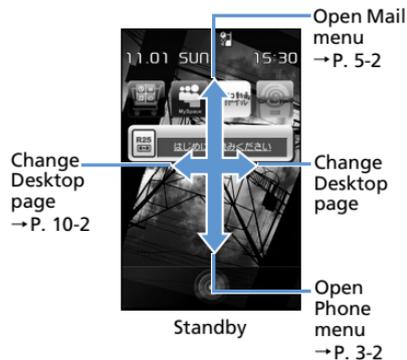
- Camera activated (P. 7-7, P. 7-10)
- Watching TV (P. 8-6)
- Music Player activated (P. 9-6)
- Video Player activated (P. 9-6)
- A voice call (P. 3-5) or video call (P. 3-9) arrives
- Using Yahoo! Keitai (P. 6-4)
- Using PC Site Browser (P. 6-7)



Photo Viewfinder (Touch Style)

Swipe

In Touch Style, swipe up, down, left or right.



Standby

Using Softkey Labels

Tap softkey labels at bottom of Display, to access/perform that operation.



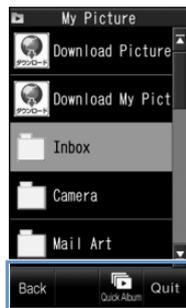
- | | |
|---|--|
| ① | Tap to access/perform that item. |
| ② | Use touch operation when icon appears. |

Tip

- For details on using Softkeys, see P. 2-2.

Touchkeys

When Touchkeys appear at bottom of Display, tap to perform that operation.



Touchkeys

- Touchkeys are available for the following:
 Touch Menu, received message windows, Yahoo! Keitai, PC Site Browser, TV¹, Videos¹, My Picture, Music Player, voice call, Direct Input window, Phone Book, Redial, Dialed Calls², Received Calls, Tomo-Den
- 1 Touchkeys appear only in list windows.
 - 2 Dialed Calls available when activated in Communication Style.

Icon	Function
	Finalize operation
	Cancel operation
	Return to source window Close list window
	Toggle view format
	Move to previous
	Move to next
	Return to previous (web pages)
	Advance to next (web pages)
	Open Pallet
	Close Pallet
	Toggle Touchkey view

Icon	Function
	Open item
	End function
	End call
	Answer/place a call
	Start video call
	Place incoming call on hold
	Place current call on hold
	Hyper Clear Voice (Off)
	Hyper Clear Voice (High)
	Hyper Clear Voice (Normal)
	Answer video call with substitute image

Icon	Function
	Send pause dial
	Close window after voice call ends
	Play song playlist
	Activate Quick Album
	Play BGM
	View album cover (Music Player)
	Switch sound output to Bluetooth® device
	Switch sound output to handset

Tip

- Change to Communication Style or Share Style when Touchkeys do not appear.

Undo/Return to Standby

Tap  to undo an operation.

Tap  to end the current function and return to Standby. Handset does not return to Standby from some functions.

Note

- When multiple functions are active in Multitask (P. 2-11), tap  to end all functions and  to end current function. When using Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser,  ⇒ YES only ends the browser in use. Other functions remain active.

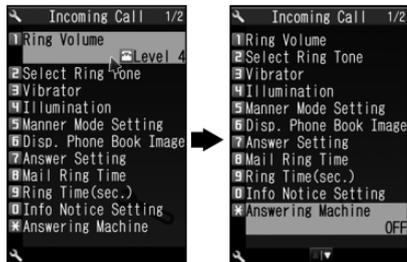
Using Neuropointer

Use Neuropointer to move pointer on Display. Select icons and menus or toggle pages with pointer.

- When  appears at the bottom of Display, use  (Neuropointer) to move pointer .

Previous/Next Menu Page

- 1 Use  to activate   Move pointer down until  appears.



 appears when pointer is at top of Display.

- 2 Press 
The next (previous) page appears.

Tip

- Indicator appearance differs by window.

Scrolling in Window

In the following windows, use Neuropointer to scroll.

- Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser when viewing site (P. 6-3, P. 6-7)
- Picture window (P. 12-3)
- PDF window (P. 12-5)
- Other Documents window (P. 12-5)

Tip

- Neuropointer unavailable in Sub Window of Split Landscape View.
- In PDF and Other Document windows, pointer changes to  or other icon, and the window scrolls in the direction you slide pointer.

More Features

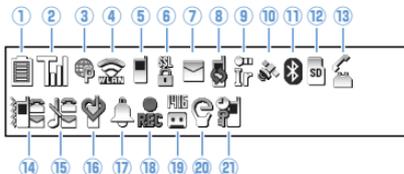
Customize

Neuropointer

- Set Neuropointer On/Off
- Neuropointer Speed (Simple Setting)
- Neuropointer Speed (Detailed Setting)
- Reset Neuropointer Speed
- Adjust Neuropointer Slide Range
- Reset Neuropointer Slide Range
- Set Neuropointer Icon Design

 P. 14-26

Display Indicators



- ① Battery Level
- ② Temperature Warning
- ③ Signal Strength
OUT Out of Range
- ④ Emission OFF Mode
- ⑤ USIM Lock Active
- ⑥ Yahoo! Keitai Mode
- ⑦ Yahoo! Keitai Communication in Progress
- ⑧ Packet Transmission (No Data Transfer)
- ⑨ Connecting to Network for Packet Transmission
- ⑩ Packet Transmission (Sending/Receiving Data)
- ⑪ WLAN Signal Strength
- ⑫ WLAN Out of Range
- ⑬ Keitai Wi-Fi Connected
- ⑭ WLAN Packet Transmission
- ⑮ SSL Secured Site Connected

- ⑯ Unread Messages
- ⑰ Handset Message Memory Full
- ⑱ USIM SMS Memory Full (when there are unread messages)
- ⑲ Handset & USIM SMS Memory Full
- ⑳ Software Updated
- ㉑ IC Card Lock Active
- ㉒ Infrared Transmission
- ㉓ Authenticating IC Card
- ㉔ S! Addressbook Back-up Synchronizing
- ㉕ Dial Lock Active
- ㉖ Original Lock Active
- ㉗ Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode
- ㉘ Original Lock Active in Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode
- ㉙ GPS Tracking
- ㉚ (Blue) Bluetooth Communication in Progress
- ㉛ (Black) Bluetooth Power Saving
- ㉜ Bluetooth Call
- ㉝ Memory Card Inserted
- ㉞ Invalid Memory Card Inserted
- ㉟ Memory Card Reader/Writer in Use
- ㊱ Accessing Memory Card
- ㊲ Voice Call
- ㊳ Video Call
- ㊴ Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached
- ㊵ USB Cable Connected (Communication, microSD or MTP Mode)
- ㊶ microSD/MTP Mode
- ㊷ Handsfree Device Connected (Communication, microSD or MTP Mode)
- ㊸ USB Cable/Handsfree Device Connected (Communication, microSD or MTP Mode)
- ㊹ Vibration Set for Incoming Calls & Messages
- ㊺ Vibration Set for Incoming Calls/ Messages
- ㊻ No Ringtone for Incoming Calls & Messages
- ㊼ No Ringtone for Incoming Calls/ Messages
- ㊽ Manner Mode
- ㊾ Auto Manner Mode Start On
- ㊿ Auto Manner Mode Release On

- 17  Alarm Set
 -  Alarm Set for Today (appears prior to set time.)
- 18  One Seg Timer Recording in Progress
- 19 
 -  Answering Machine On
 -  New Voice Calls
 -  New Video Calls
 -  New Voice & Video Calls
 -  Auto Voice Memo On
 -  New Auto Voice Memos
 - 
 -  New Voice Calls
 -  New Video Calls
 -  New Auto Voice Memos
 -  New Voice & Video Calls
 -  New Voice Calls & Auto Voice Memos
 -  New Video Calls & Auto Voice Memos
 -  New Voice & Video Calls, Auto Voice Memos
- 20  ECO Mode
 -  Privacy Angle On ( when Backlight is Off)
- 21  Keypad Lock Active (*After Closed, Timer or Lock Key is ON*)

Tip

- To see indicator descriptions:
 ⇒ Settings ⇒  ⇒ Display ⇒  ⇒ 
- Icons ⇒ 

Mobile Widget (Japanese)

Set Widgets to appear on Desktop.

- For information about Mobile Widget, see P. 10-2.



Desktop Page

— Add Widgets Here

— Use Pointer to select widget

Note

- Flash® wallpaper pauses when accessing widgets. To allow Flash® to operate, set *Standby Disp. Set.* (P. 14-24) for Mobile Widget to *OFF*.

Tip

- Tap widgets for direct access from Standby (Touch Style).

More Features

Customize

Style Mode Settings

- Set Display Design Collectively
- Check Default Style Mode Settings
- Edit Title of a Style
- Save Current Style Mode Settings as Favorite
- Change Each Item for Favorites
- Clear All Favorite Settings

(▶ P. 14-3)

Display Settings

- Wallpaper
- Show Calendar in Standby
- Set Wallpaper Image to Change When Handset Returns to Standby
- Display Color Scheme
- Battery Level Indicator/Signal Strength Indicator Design
- Interface Language
- Guard from Prying Eyes
- Set Effect for Screen Change
- Display Quality

(▶ P. 14-3)

Backlight

- Set Backlight & Power Saving
- Set Brightness of Backlight

(▶ P. 14-5)

Standby Indicators

- Enable Indicator Selector

(▶ P. 14-7)

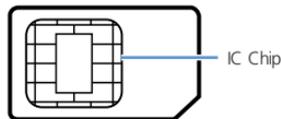
Before Using USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card that contains customer information (phone number, etc.). A USIM Card must be inserted to use your handset.

- Store Phone Book entries and SMS on USIM Card.
- Insert USIM Card into other USIM-compatible SoftBank handsets to use information on Card.
- Do not apply excessive force when inserting/removing USIM Card.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage caused by inserting USIM Card into other IC card readers/writers.
- USIM Card may become warm during use. This is not a malfunction.
- Keep IC chip clean.
- For details, refer to the manual supplied with your USIM Card.
- Do not drop USIM Card or subject to excessive shock. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Do not bend USIM Card or place heavy objects on it. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Avoid extreme temperatures.
- Do not scratch, carelessly touch or short-circuit the IC chip. Doing so may result in data loss or malfunction.
- Clean USIM Card with a dry soft cloth (such as is used for eyeglasses).
- Use a SoftBank-designated USIM Card. Using a non-designated card may result in handset malfunction.

Other Notes on USIM Cards

- USIM Cards are the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Cards will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Cards to SoftBank upon cancellation or suspension of service.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications and performance may change without prior notice.
- Keep a separate copy of data saved on your USIM Card. SoftBank is not liable for lost data.
- If USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-57).
- Downloaded files (S! Appli, videos, Saved Pages, etc.) saved to handset or memory card may be inaccessible after USIM Card replacement, handset upgrade or service subscription cancellation. If a different USIM Card is inserted, the cookies and cache are cleared to protect personal information.



USIM PINs

There are two security codes for USIM Cards: PIN1 and PIN2.

PIN1

PIN1 is a four- to eight-digit code to prevent unauthorized handset use by a third party.

- Default PIN1 is 9999.
- PIN1 can be changed (P. 4-2).
- When *PIN1 Code Entry Set* is set to *ON*, PIN1 must be entered each time handset is turned on to be used.

PIN2

PIN2 is required to reset total call cost or to set a maximum limit to call costs.

- Default PIN2 is 9999.
- PIN2 can be changed (P. 4-2).

PIN Lock & Cancellation (PUK)

If PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, PIN Lock is activated, limiting handset use to specific functions. Enter Personal Unblocking Key (PUK1/PUK2) to cancel PIN Lock.

- For information on PUK, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-57).

Note

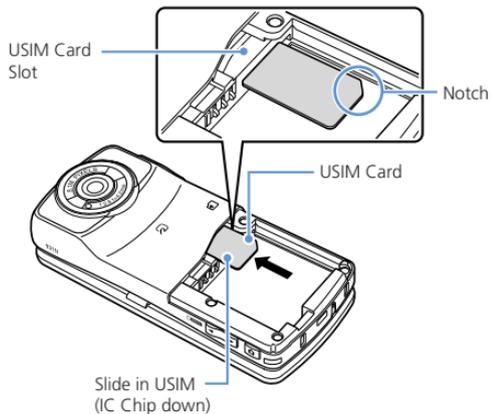
- If PIN1 is incorrectly entered three times, and then PUK is incorrectly entered 10 times, USIM Card locks and handset cannot be used.
- If PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times, and then PUK is incorrectly entered 10 times, operations that require PIN2 will become unusable.
- Write down your PUK.
- To cancel USIM Card lock, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-57).

USIM Card Installation

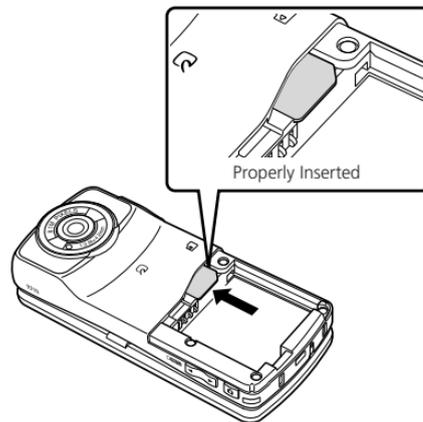
- Remove Battery (P. 1-23) before inserting or removing USIM Card.

Insertion

1 Slide in USIM Card (IC chip facing down)



2 Push USIM Card in completely



Removal

1 Slide USIM Card out gently

Notes on Charging Battery

- Charge battery at least once every six months. If battery is left uncharged for a long period, it may become unusable or its operation time may decrease.
- Avoid connecting too many things to one AC outlet. Doing so may cause the AC outlet to overheat and cause a fire.
- Battery and AC Charger may become warm during charging, but this is not a malfunction. If they become too hot, however, stop charging and contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-57).
- If Charging Indicator flashes red during charging, battery may be faulty. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-57).
- Depending on the conditions of usage, the battery may expand as it nears the end of its life. However, this presents no safety problems.
- Check the battery type on its label:

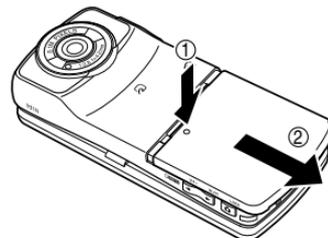
Mark	Type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion battery Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource. Do not dispose of them as municipal waste. Bring used batteries to your nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape. Observe local regulations on battery disposal.



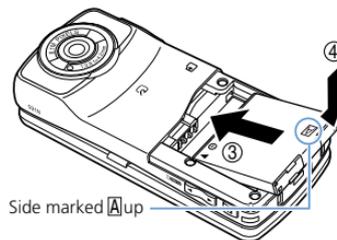
Battery Installation

Insertion

- 1 Press and slide battery cover off

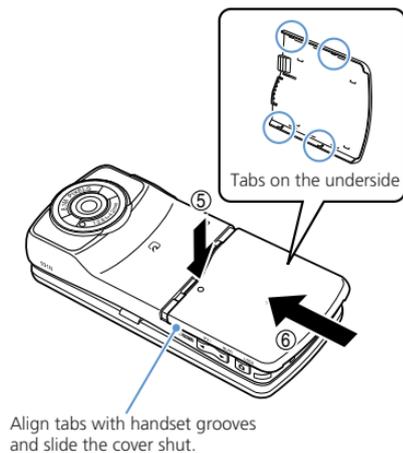


- 2 Align battery and handset terminals then insert battery



Battery & Charger

3 Replace cover



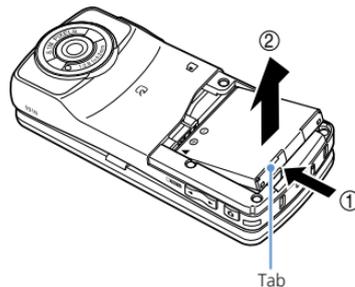
Note

- Do not force Battery Cover shut. Tab may be misaligned and cause breakage.

Removal

- Turn off handset before removing battery.

- 1 Remove battery cover
- 2 Press (1) and lift out (2)



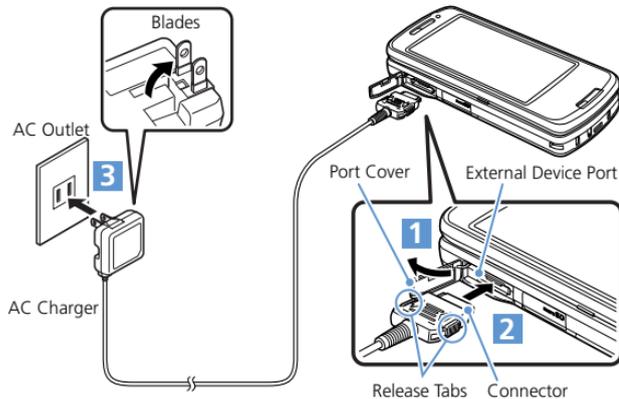
1

Getting Started

Charging Battery

Using AC Charger

Use only SoftBank-specified AC Charger (ZTDAA1, sold separately).

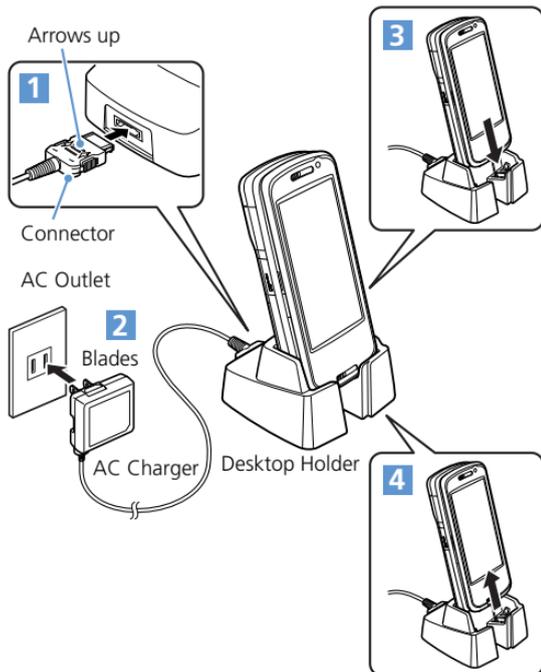


- 1 Open Port Cover**
- 2 Insert Charger connector into External Device Port**
- 3 Extend Charger blades and plug into an AC Outlet**
Charging Indicator lights red while charging. When charging is complete, Indicator goes out.
- 4 Disconnect connector from handset**
Press and hold Release Tabs to remove connector.
- 5 Unplug Charger from AC Outlet**
- 6 Close Port Cover**

Battery & Charger

Using Desktop Holder

Desktop Holder is sold separately.



1 Insert Charger connector into Desktop Holder

2 Plug Charger into an AC Outlet

3 Place handset in Desktop Holder

Charging Indicator lights red while charging. When charging is complete, Indicator goes out.

4 Lift out

Note

- Battery can only be charged while inserted in handset.
- When both Charging Indicator and Display Indicator  go out and **Charge Unusual Stop Charge** appears, disconnect handset from AC Charger and remove battery. Set up handset and Charger and start charging again. If the same error occurs, AC Charger may be faulty or a non-specified charger is being used. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-57).
- When both Charging Indicator and Display Indicator  flash, handset temperature is unsuitable for charging (Temperature Warning). Wait until handset cools down.

More Features

Customize

Backlight

- Set Backlight during Charging

[▶ P. 14-5](#)

Sounds

- Set to Play Charging Start/End Tones

[▶ P. 14-10](#)

1

Getting Started

Power On

- Make sure USIM Card is correctly inserted before turning power on.

1 Press and hold



Tip

- After USIM Card is replaced, Security Code is required when powering handset on for the first time. If Security Code is incorrectly entered five times, handset shuts down. Turn handset on again.

Initial Setup

Setup prompt appears in Japanese the first time handset is turned on. Select **NO** and press  to exit. Change interface language to English (P. 14-5) and restart handset to perform setup as follows.

1 [Initial Settings] window **YES**



▶ To Automatically Enter Date & Time **Auto** Select a time zone



▶ To Manually Enter Date & Time **Manual (Date Time Set)** Select a time zone Enter date and time

2 Enter Security Code (9999)

 Enter new Security Code 

 **YES** 

3 Select a font size

Select **Separate Setting** to customize font per window (P. 14-4).

4 [Keypad Sound Setting] window

 **ON or OFF** 

5 Select pointer speed

Tip

- Setup prompt no longer appears after setup is complete.
- The default Security Code is 9999.

Retrieving Network Information

When , , or  is pressed after initial setup, a prompt appears. Select **YES** to update network settings.

Tip

- Retrieve network information to use network-related services, such as mail and the Internet.
- To manually update network settings:
  **Settings**   **Connection Settings**   **Retrieve NW Info** 
 **YES** 

Power Off

1 Press and hold

Handset shuts down.

More Features

Customize

Clock

- Hide Clock
- Clock Size
- Clock Color
- Set Auto Time Adjustment
- Manually Adjust Time
- Summer Time
- Time Zone (Sub Clock)
- Hide Sub Clock
- Summer Time (Sub Clock)
- Time Zone Major City (Sub Clock)

[▶ P. 14-2](#)

Auto Power On/Off

- Set Auto Power On/Off

[▶ P. 14-3](#)

Display Settings

- Set a Wake-up Image
- Set a Wake-up Message
- Set Font Type
- Set Font Thickness
- Set Font Sizes Collectively
- Set Font Size for Each Function Window

[▶ P. 14-4](#)

Sounds

- Set Key Sound Off

[▶ P. 14-10](#)

Neuropointer

- Set Neuropointer On/Off
- Neuropointer Speed (Simple Setting)
- Neuropointer Speed (Detailed Setting)
- Reset Neuropointer Speed
- Adjust Neuropointer Slide Range
- Reset Neuropointer Slide Range
- Set Neuropointer Icon Design

[▶ P. 14-26](#)

Resetting Handset

- Reset All Settings to Default
- Initialize Handset to Default Status

[▶ P. 14-31](#)

Use your handset responsibly. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Activating Manner Mode

Mute handset sound.

- 1** Press and hold **#**

Note

- When handset is set to vibrate for incoming calls, be careful as handset may slide off, slide into a stove, etc.
- The other party may hear a short beep if Manner Mode is set or canceled during a call.

Tip

- Press and hold **#** again to cancel Manner Mode.
- Shutter click sounds even in Manner Mode.
- Press and hold **#** to set or cancel Manner Mode during a call. Short beeps sound through the earpiece when Manner Mode is set or canceled during a call.
- Set or cancel Manner Mode by pressing and holding **7**.

More Features

Customize

Manner Mode

- Set Manner Mode Type
- Configure Original Manner Mode
- Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Start
- Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Release
- Toggle Auto Manner Mode Start and Release On/Off

[▶ P. 14-9](#)

Security Code, Center Access Code and Network Password are required to use handset.

- Do not reveal these codes to others. Write down your codes.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage due to handset misuse.

Security Code

Security Code, 9999 by default, is required to use some handset functions. The code can be changed.

- If Security Code is entered incorrectly or nothing is entered for 15 seconds, a tone sounds and a message appears. Enter correct Security Code.

Note

- The warning tone does not sound in Manner Mode or when *Keypad Sound* is set to *OFF*.

Changing Security Code

- 1  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Security** ⇒  ⇒ **Change Security Code** ⇒ 
- 2 **Enter current Security Code** ⇒ 
- 3 **Enter new Security Code** ⇒  ⇒ **YES** ⇒ 

Center Access Code

Center Access Code, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to access Optional Services via landlines or to subscribe to fee-based information.

Network Password

Network Password, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to use Call Barring.

- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings are locked. Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

Checking Battery Level

Use Battery Level meters as a guide only.

Battery Level Indicator

Appears at top of Display.

- 81% to 100% Battery Level
- 61% to 80% Battery Level
- 41% to 60% Battery Level
- 21% to 40% Battery Level
- 0% to 20% Battery Level

Battery Level Beeper & Large Indicator

Check battery level by number of beeps and large indicator.

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Battery Level** ⇒

Battery Level indicator appears. Beeps sound according to the battery level.

Five beeps:

81% to 100% Battery Level

Four beeps:

61% to 80% Battery Level

Three beeps:

41% to 60% Battery Level

Two beeps:

21% to 40% Battery Level

One beep:

0% to 20% Battery Level

Note

- The battery level beeper does not sound in Manner Mode or when *Keypad Sound* is set to *OFF*.

Tip

- When Battery is empty, *Recharge Battery* appears, the battery alarm sounds for about 10 seconds, and handset powers off in about 60 seconds. Charge battery.

My Phone Number

Check handset phone number.

- 1 ⇒

Account Details appear.

■ Add Other Information

⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒

Select an item ⇒ ⇒ Enter information ⇒ ⇒

■ View All Information

⇒ ⇒ **Display All Data** ⇒ ⇒

Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒

to switch tabs

■ Reset Account Details

⇒ ⇒ **Reset** ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Checking Network Status

Check Network Status to confirm if voice calls and/or packet transmission is available.

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Network Status** ⇒

Network information appears.

Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable

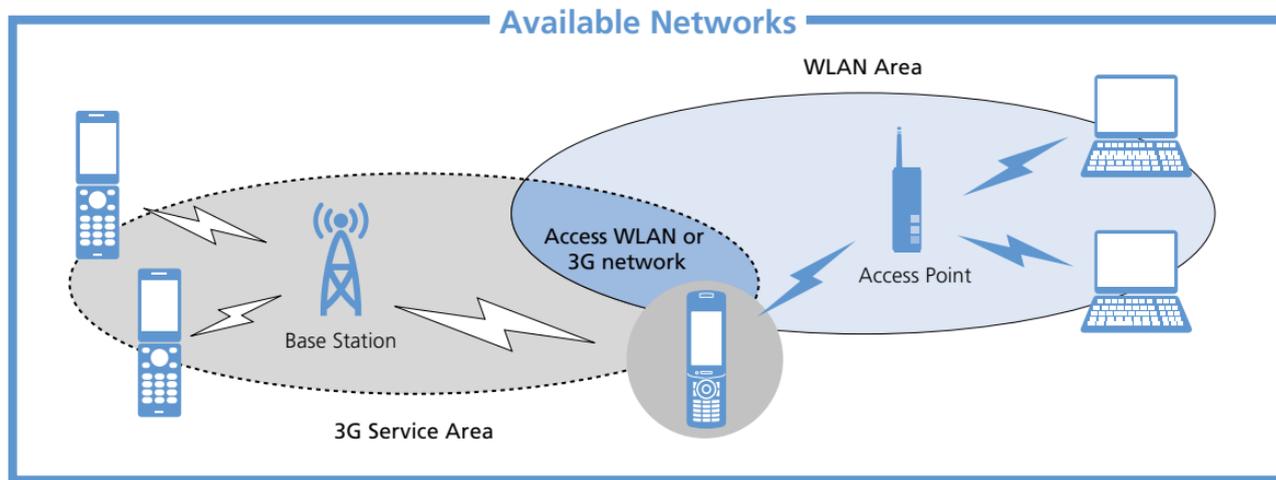
Use Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (sold separately) to connect earphones.

When sound source is monaural (calls, etc.), stereo earphones output monaural sound to left and right earphones; when sound source is stereo, only the left channel is output to monaural earphones.

Using WLAN

Use WLAN connections for access to the Internet. Select from household network or public networks.

- For details on WLAN configuration, see P. 13-12.



Faster Internet Access with WLAN

- Access the Internet at higher speeds than 3G/GSM networks. With WLAN connection, Internet access is available even outside the 3G network range.
- Access Keitai Wi-Fi or other services for high-speed packet transmission. Download large-size content, stream multimedia files and use PC Site Browser.

Using ECO Mode

When set to ECO Mode, light, sound and Display settings are modified to decrease battery consumption.

- 1 Press and hold  ECO Mode is set, and  appears.

Note

- ECO Mode is canceled when handset is turned off.
- The other party may hear short beeps if ECO Mode is set or canceled during a call.

Tip

- Press and hold  again to cancel ECO Mode.
- Press and hold  to set or cancel ECO Mode during a call.

Basic Operations



Menu Operations	2-2	Advanced Features	2-29
Accessing Handset Functions.....	2-2	Main Menu	2-29
Icons/Notifications.....	2-4	Desktop Icons	2-29
Info.....	2-7	Text Entry	2-30
Navigating through Menus	2-8	Templates	2-31
Multitask	2-10	Dictionaries.....	2-31
Activating Another Function.....	2-10	Phone Book	2-32
Toggling Functions.....	2-11	S! Addressbook Back-up	2-34
Text Entry	2-12		
Overview.....	2-12		
Entering Characters in 5-touch Mode.....	2-13		
Editing Text	2-15		
Editing Templates	2-16		
Using Dictionaries	2-16		
Entering Characters in 2-touch Mode.....	2-17		
Entering Characters in T9 Input Mode.....	2-17		
Phone Book	2-20		
Overview.....	2-20		
Creating Phone Book Entries.....	2-21		
Using Phone Book	2-22		
Phone Book Settings	2-24		
S! Addressbook Back-up	2-27		
Overview.....	2-27		
Using S! Addressbook Back-up.....	2-27		

2



Accessing Handset Functions

- In this guide, most operations start from Main Menu.

From Main Menu

Press to open Main Menu. Use to select an item and press to open sub menus.



Main Menu

Tip

- Handset returns to Standby after 15 seconds of inactivity.

Using Softkeys & Multi Selector

Press Softkeys or use Multi Selector in Standby to access assigned functions.

Softkeys

- : Open Mail menu.
- (Press and hold): Open Yahoo! menu.
- : Access the function assigned to the key.

Multi Selector

- : Open Active Desktop Page.
- : Open Phone Book Search window.
- : Open Received Calls window.
- : Open Redial window.

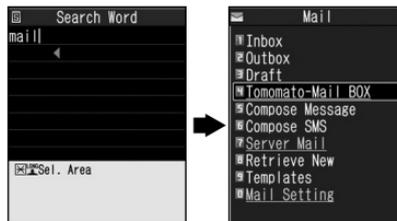
Keyword Search

Enter keywords to search for menu items.

1 →

2 Enter keyword →

<Example> Enter "mail"



Corresponding results appear.

3 Select an item →

Press to toggle results.

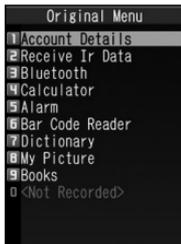


Menu Operations

From Original Menu

Assign often-used functions to Original Menu for quick access.

1 →



Press to toggle between Main Menu and Original Menu.

Enter Menu Item Number

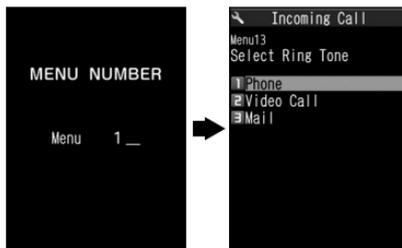
Enter these numbers for direct menu access. Note that Main Menu Theme must be set to **Basic**.

- See P. 15-20 for menu item numbers.
- See P. 2-29 for details on changing Main Menu Theme.

<Example> Access **Select Ring Tone** (menu no. 13)

1

2 →



Activating Functions in Touch Style

Access functions from Touch Style.

1

Touch Menu opens.



Touch Menu

2 Tap an item



Activating Functions in Share Style

Access functions in Landscape View or Split Landscape View.



Share Menu opens.



Share Menu

2 Use to select an item

Icons/Notifications

Add functions to Icon Window and use them as shortcuts. Notifications appear to inform you of missed calls, new messages, etc. Select a notification to check the information. The following shortcuts are set by default.

- ・ Wi-Fiコンテンツを探す (Wi-Fi Contents)*
 - ・ メニューリスト (Menu List)*
 - ・ S! Quick News List*
 - ・ 各種手続・料金 (Manage Account/Fees)*
 - ・ 待ちうた (Machi-Uta™)* ・ TV
 - ・ Photo Mode ・ Quick Search
- * Links to Japanese page. Requires network connection.



Icons

Icons

Icon	Function
	Wi-Fiコンテンツを探す Wi-Fi Contents
	メニューリスト Menu List
	S! Quick News List
	各種手続・料金 Manage Account/Fees
	待ちうた Machi-Uta™
	TV
	Photo Mode
	Quick Search
	Menu
	Call Phone Number



Menu Operations

Icon	Function
	Compose S! Mail
	Compose SMS
	Access Webpage (Yahoo! Keitai)
	Access Webpage (PC Site Browser)
	Play Melody
	Show Image
	Play Video
	S! Appli
	Inbox Folder
	Movie Mode
	Voice Mode

Icon	Function
	Schedule
	To Do List
	Text Memo
	Bar Code Reader
	Text Reader
	Music Player
	Life History Viewer
	Calculator
	Dictionary
	Receive IR Transmission
	Bluetooth

Icon	Function
	Original Menu
	PC Site Browser
	Books
	Play/Erase Msg.
	Play/Erase VC Msg.

Notifications

Icon	Function/Information
	Missed Calls
	Answering Machine Play/delete messages.
	Answering Machine (Video Message) Play/delete Video Messages.



Menu Operations

2

Basic Operations

Icon	Function/Information
VM	Voice Mail
New	New Messages
Miss	Missed Alarms
Alarm	Missed TV Programs
Finish	Timer Recording Finished
Max	Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached
Update	Software Update
Connect	USB Mode Communication
Search	Network Re-search

Icon	Function/Information
Update	New S! Info Channel
Miss	S! Info Channel Reception Failure
New	New Weather Info.
Miss	Weather Info. Reception Failure
Get	View Content Keys

Notifications disappear after accessing the functions/information. Answering Machine and Voice Mail notifications disappear after message is played back. Icon for obtained contents key disappears after contents key is checked or deleted.

Adding Icons

Add up to 15 icons.

- From a function \rightarrow \rightarrow **Add Desktop Icon** \rightarrow (\rightarrow YES \rightarrow)

Tip

- Alternatively,
 \rightarrow \rightarrow Create Icon \rightarrow \rightarrow Select function \rightarrow \rightarrow Select a Theme \rightarrow

Accessing Icons & Notifications

-



Icon Window

- \rightarrow Select an icon \rightarrow

Scrolling Icons

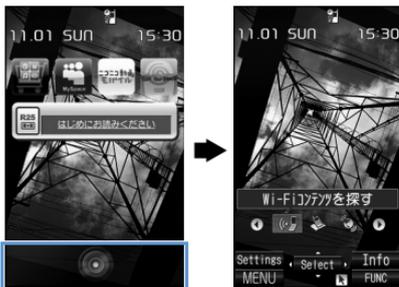




Menu Operations

Accessing Icons & Notifications in Touch Style

1 Tap Icon Access Button



Icon Access Button

Desktop Icons appear.

2 Tap an icon

■ Scrolling Icons

→ ◀ or ▶

Info

Phone numbers, functions, etc. saved to Icon Window appear in Info Window.

Accessing Data and Functions

Press to toggle Info Window and Icon Window.

1 →



Info Window

Desktop opens to previously used window.

2 → Select an item →

Items

Item	Details
What's New	Access/view Notifications (P. 2-5).
Recent Messages	Access new messages.
Schedule	Schedule Access schedule entries (today/tomorrow). To Do List Access To Do List entries.
Shortcuts	Access Icons saved to Icon Window.
Phonebook	Phone Number Access phone numbers from Icon Window. E-mail address Select e-mail address (from Icon Window) to Create S! Mail.
Bookmarks	Yahoo! Keitai Access bookmarked sites. PC Site Browser Access bookmarked sites.

2

Basic Operations

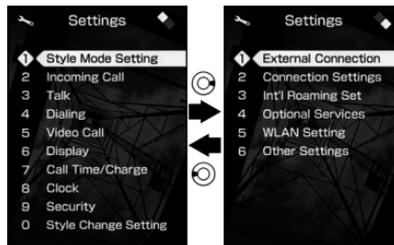


Item	Details
Images & Movies	Still images Open image.
	Video Play video.
Calendar	Open Calendar.
Clock	Access Alarm list (Set Main Time window appears when clock is not set).
Settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set items on/off. • Change item order.

Navigating through Menus

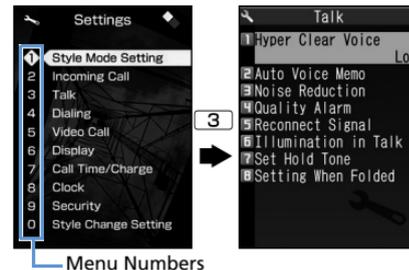
Scrolling Pages

Use or (or) to scroll next/previous pages.



Selecting Menu Items Using Keypad

Use keypad to enter number corresponding to menu item.



Return to Previous Window or Standby

Press to cancel operation and return to previous window.

Press to return to Standby.

● May not apply to all functions/windows.



More Features

Advanced

Main Menu

- Change Main Menu Theme
- Switch to Simple Menu
- Temporarily Change Design Theme of Main Menu

(▶ P. 2-29)

Desktop Icons

- Delete Notifications
- Edit Title of a Desktop Icon
- Change Icon Image
- Check Icon Information
- Change Order of Desktop Icons
- Delete Desktop Icons
- Reset Desktop Icons
- Change Theme of Desktop Icons

(▶ P. 2-29)

Customize

Display Settings

- Set Softkey Color

(▶ P. 14-4)

Desktop Icons

- Set Desktop Theme
- Change Icon Design of a Theme
- Change Order of Icons of a Theme
- Copy Icons to Another Theme
- Move Icons to Another Theme

- Delete Icons of a Theme
- Set New Message Indicator in 3D

(▶ P. 14-6)

Menu Display Settings

- List View and Details View
- Set Main Menu Theme
- Change Icon Design (Original Theme)
- Change Background (Original Theme)
- Reset Original Theme Settings
- Save Last Selected Menu Item to Memory
- Add a Menu Item to Original Menu
- Change Order of Original Menu Items
- Cancel Original Menu Items
- Reset Original Menu

(▶ P. 14-6)

Shortcut Key

- Change Function Assigned to Shortcut Key

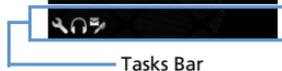
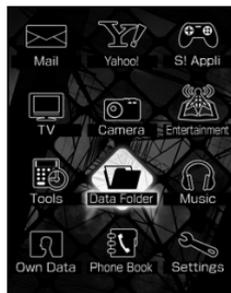
(▶ P. 14-26)



Activate one function per group at one time.

Function Group	Function
Mail Group	Mail
Yahoo! Group	Yahoo! Keitai, PC Site Browser
S! Appli Group	S! Appli
Settings Group	Settings, Optional Services
Tools Group	Data Folder, Tools, Phone Book, Own Data, Camera
TV & Music Group	TV, Music

- See P. 15-2 for available combinations of functions that can be activated at the same time.
- Confirm currently active tasks in Tasks Bar.



Tasks Bar

- Transmission fees are incurred while accessing functions during a voice call.

Activating Another Function

Activate another function without exiting current function.

1 While using a function → MENU →

▶ To Activate Function from Main Menu

MENU → Select another function → ●

▶ Mobile Widget

☺ → Select a widget → ●

▶ Mail Function



▶ To Access Yahoo! Keitai Portal



▶ To Activate Function Assigned to Shortcut Key



Note

- When multitasking in Touch Style, tap **Quit** to end all functions and **Back** to end current function. When using Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser, **Quit** → YES only ends the browser in use. Other functions remain active.



Toggling Functions

- 1 When multiple functions are active ⇨



Task Switch Window

To go to Standby, press

Press to reopen Task Switch window.

- 2 ⇨ Select a task indicator ⇨

Tip

- To End Multitask:
[Task Switch] window ⇨ ⇨ *Quit Selected* or *Quit All Function* ⇨
- Alternatively, press and hold to return to Standby while current functions remain active.



Text Entry

Handset has three text input methods: 5-touch, 2-touch and T9 Input.

- This guide mainly explains Japanese text entry in 5-touch mode.

Overview

Text Entry Window

A text entry window consists of Character Entry Pane, Guide Pane and Status Pane. Indicator and key descriptions are as follows:



Character Entry Pane

Guide Pane

Status Pane

Text Entry Window

Character Entry Pane

	Cursor
◀	End mark (end of text)

Guide Pane

▲▼ CHG	↻ to convert characters
▲▼ All	↻ to search Phone Book
▲▼ Search	
◀▶	⊗ to specify a text range to copy/cut
▲▼ Area	
⊗ CR	⌘ to insert line feed
⊗ A/a	⌘ to switch case of each character, or to add dakuten (`)/handakuten (`)
⊞ AA → aa	⌘ to cancel Caps Lock mode
⊞ aa → Aa	⌘ to set Shift mode
⊞ Aa → AA	⌘ to set Caps Lock mode
⊞ Sel. Area	Press and hold ⌘ to select area of text to copy (cut).
⊞ Paste	Press and hold ⌘ to paste copied or cut text.
↶ Back	↶ to cycle characters on a key in reverse order (e.g. え → ゅ)

Status Pane

2 ②	Text input method (2-touch/T9 Input mode) (No indicator for 5-touch mode)
INS OVR	Insert/Overwrite mode
🔠 🗑️ 📄 📧	Character entry mode
☒	Kuten code input mode (P. 2-31)
🔠 1/2	Double-byte/Single-byte mode
Sm	Lower case input mode
Sm 🗑️	Shift/Caps Lock mode
📄	Bytes remaining for text entry
📄	Number of entered characters (appears when entering text to USIM Phone Book/SMS message)



Split Windows

In some instances, a second window opens with text entry window.



Function window

Text entry window

Referring to Dictionary from a text entry window

Tip

- Press and select *Change Window* to switch windows.

Changing Text Input Methods

- 1 [Text Entry] window **CHG Input Method** **Select a text input method**
Alternatively, press and hold .

Toggling Character Entry Modes

- 1 [Text Entry] window
Press to toggle entry modes.
Kanji/hiragana Katakana
Alphanumeric Numbers

Tip

- In 2-touch mode, press to toggle single-byte and double-byte modes.

Interruptions during Text Entry

When Battery Runs Out

Battery alarm sounds and *Recharge Battery* appears. Text is automatically saved. Access the same function to continue text entry.

Text may not be saved depending on the function.

When is Pressed

A message appears asking whether to end text entry. Select *YES* and press to end text entry without saving the text. To continue text entry, select *NO* and press .

When a Voice Call Arrives

Answer the call. After call ends, text entry window returns.

Entering Characters in 5-touch Mode

Press a key multiple times to cycle through letters assigned to that key.

- For key assignment, see P. 15-10.

Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana

Enter a reading (in hiragana) and convert to kanji, katakana, etc.

Using Word Prediction

Enter a character and Word Prediction suggests words starting with that character. Word Prediction also suggests word selection for words to follow. Switch to kanji/hiragana mode to use Word Prediction.



Text Entry

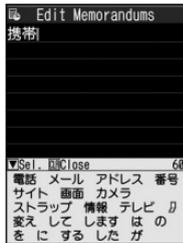
<Example> Entering “携帯電話”

1 [Text Entry] window → 2 (four times)

“け” is entered in Character Entry Pane. Suggestion list shows predictions for words beginning with “け” in Guide Pane.



2 → Select “携帯” →



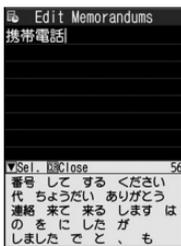
“携帯” appears in Character Entry Pane. A suggestion list of words that follow “携帯” appears in Guide Pane.

■ When Required Word Does Not Appear

→ CLEAR

Continue hiragana (reading) entry in Character Entry Pane to narrow down selection.

3 → Select “電話” →



■ To Exit Suggestion List

→ CLEAR or [F]

Tip

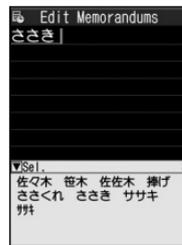
- Handset has a learning feature that adds entered words to the suggestion list. Press and hold CLEAR to delete an added word from the suggestion list.

Converting Hiragana

If the required suggestion does not appear or word prediction is set to off, convert to Kanji as shown below:

<Example> Entering “佐々木”

1 [Text Entry] window → 3 (once) → → 3 (once) → 2 (twice)



2 [F]

■ To Determine Entered Hiragana without Converting It

→

3 Select a word →

■ To Change Conversion Range

→



Dakuten (`) & Handakuten (´)

<Example> Entering “が”

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ [2] (once)
⇨ [✳] ⇨ [●]

Switching to Lower Case

<Example> Change “つ” to “つ”

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ [4] (three times) ⇨ [✳] ⇨ [●]

Pictographs & Symbols

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ [☑]



- 2 Select a pictograph/symbol ⇨ [●]
Press [☑] or [☑] to toggle pictograph/symbol categories.

To Toggle Full-Screen List and Continuous Entry

⇨ [Ⓜ]

- 3 [CLEAR]

The pictograph/symbol list window is closed.

Emoticons

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ [Ⓜ] ⇨ **Face Mark** ⇨ [●]

- 2 Select an emoticon ⇨ [●]

Common Phrases (Templates)

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ [Ⓜ] ⇨ **Common Phrases** ⇨ [●]

- 2 Select a folder ⇨ [●] ⇨ Select a phrase ⇨ [●] (twice)

Alphanumerics, Numbers & Katakana

Enter alphanumerics, numbers or katakana in kanji/hiragana input mode.

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ Enter hiragana ⇨ [☑] ⇨ Select a character ⇨ [●]

Editing Text

Deletion & Correction

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ Move cursor to the left of the character to delete ⇨ [CLEAR]

To Delete All Characters to the Right of Cursor

⇨ Press and hold [CLEAR]

To Delete Entire Text

⇨ Move cursor to the end of text ⇨ Press and hold [CLEAR]

- 2 Position cursor ⇨ Enter correct characters

Copy, Cut & Paste

- Only one entry can be stored on clipboard. If you copy or cut new text, the previously copied or cut text is overwritten.
- Copied or cut text can be pasted repeatedly until you copy or cut new text, or turn handset power off.

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ [Ⓜ] ⇨ **Copy or Cut** ⇨ [●]

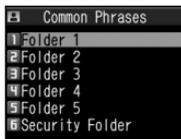


Text Entry

- 2 Move cursor to beginning of characters → ●
- 3 Move cursor to end of characters → ●
- 4 Position cursor → [P] → **Paste** → ●

Editing Templates

- 1 MENU → **Own Data** → ● → **Common Phrases** → ●



Templates (Common phrases) Window

- 2 Select a folder → ● (→ Enter Security Code → ●)



Templates List

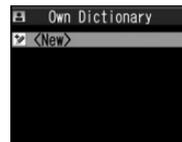
- 3 Select an entry → [E] → Enter text → ● (→ Enter title → ●)

Using Dictionaries

Saving Words to Own Dictionary

Save frequently used words to Own Dictionary. For each word, save a reading (in hiragana). When the reading is entered in a text entry window, the word appears among the suggestions.

- 1 MENU → **Own Data** → ● → **Own Dictionary** → ●



Own Dictionary Window

- 2 <New> → ● → Enter word → ● → Enter reading → ●

Tip

- To check saved words: Select a word → ●



■ Toggle Kanji and Hiragana Suggestion Lists

⇒ #

■ Toggle English and Japanese Suggestion Lists

⇒ [EN]

2 [Text Entry] window

Select word from among the suggestions in Guide Pane.

■ To Show Converted Words on Suggestion List

⇒ [R]

For example, if you specify “はる,” then “張る,” “貼る” and other words that have the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

■ To Show Predicted Words on Suggestion List

⇒ [✓]

For example, if you specify “はる,” then “春休み,” “遥か” and other words that begin with the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

■ To Exit Suggestion List and Continue Character Entry

⇒ [CLEAR]

3 [Text Entry] window

Re-entering Words

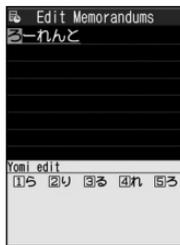
Re-enter as shown below if the desired word does not appear.

<Example> Entering “らんらんと”

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇒ [9] (row ら) ⇒ [0] (row わ) ⇒ [9] (row ら) ⇒ [0] (row わ) ⇒ [4] (row た)
“らんらんと” does not appear in suggestion list.

2 [Text Entry] window



Cursor is on the first character of the word. The edit window opens in Guide Pane, where hiragana characters of row “ら” appear.

- 3 [1] (row ら) ⇒ [3] (row ん) ⇒ [1] (row ら) ⇒ [3] (row ん) ⇒ [5] (row と)



■ If No Correction is Necessary

⇒ [C] to move cursor to the next character

■ To End Re-entering a Word

⇒ [R]

The words predicted/converted from the re-entered word appear on the suggestion list.

4 [Text Entry] window



More Features

Advanced

Text Entry

- Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case
- Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte
- Cycle Characters in Reverse Order
- Undo Last Operation
- Move Cursor to Top/End of Text
- Overwrite & Insert Modes
- Insert Line Feed
- Input a Space
- Use Dictionary
- Quote Text
- Use Kuten Codes

(▶ P. 2-30)

Templates

- Edit a Folder Name
- Reset a Folder Name
- Edit Templates
- Reset Templates

(▶ P. 2-31)

Dictionaries

- Edit Entries
- Delete Entries
- Edit Title
- View Information
- Delete Dictionaries

(▶ P. 2-31)

Customize

Text Entry

- Set Text Input Method
- Set Word Prediction
- Set to Show T9 Suggestion Words in Kanji or Hiragana
- Clear Learning History
- Change Font Size
- Set Auto Cursor Movement in 5-Touch Mode

(▶ P. 14-26)



Overview

Save phone numbers, e-mail addresses and other contact information to Phone Book.

Contacts & Settings

Entry Items

- FN · N · F Name & Reading
- Location Information
- Group
- Birthday
- 4 Phone Numbers
- Memo
- 3 E-mail Addresses
- Still Image
- Address
- No Entry Number

Custom Settings

- Incoming Ringtone
- Vibration
- Incoming Image
- Outgoing Message
- Illumination

Others

- Secret Data



Handy Functions

Speed Dial

Abbreviated dialing for numbers in Phone Book (P. 3-13).

Tomo-Den

Save frequently accessed Phone Book entries to Tomo-Den (P. 3-13).

Reject Calls

Reject calls from phone numbers not saved in Phone Book (P. 4-6).

● Back Up Important Information

Keep a separate copy of Phone Book entry information. When battery is exhausted or removed for extended periods, Phone Book data may be lost or altered. Damage to handset may also affect data recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost/altered Phone Book data.



Creating Phone Book Entries

<Example> Enter a name, phone number, e-mail address and specify a group

1 → **Phone Book** → → → → **Add to Phone Book** → → **Phone** →

2 → → **Enter family name** → → **Check reading** → → **N** → → **Enter first name** → → **Check reading** →

Reading is entered automatically. Edit as necessary.



Phone Book Entry Window

3 → → **Select a group** →

4 → → → **Enter phone number** → → **Select an icon** →

To save additional numbers, select <Not Stored> and repeat the same step.

5 → → **Enter e-mail address** → → **Select an icon** →

To save additional addresses, select <Not Stored> and repeat the same step.

6

Setting Incoming Image

1 **[Phone Book Entry] window** → →

▶ **To Capture an Image with Camera Photo Mode** → → Capture image →

▶ **To Select an Image in Data Folder Select Image** → → Select a folder → → Select a still image →

Tip

- To cancel selected image, select *Release This* and press .

Creating Entries from Other Functions

Create entries from:

- Received calls
- Dialed Calls
- Redial
- Text Reader
- Bar Code Reader
- Receives/Sent Address List
- Yahoo! Keitai
- Phone Number Entry window

<Example> Create an entry from Received Calls

1 → **Select a record** → → **Add to Phone Book** → → **Phone** →

▶ **To Save As a New Entry New** →

▶ **To Add Another Entry Add** → → Search Phone Book → → Select an entry → (twice)
Phone number is entered.

2 **Enter other items** → (→ **YES** →



Phone Book

Search All:

Phone Book is organized by tabs (Japanese syllabary order).



Phone Book Entry List

Tip

- Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card are indicated by .

Accessing Entries from Other Functions

Access Phone Book entries from Received Calls, Dialed Calls, Redial and Received/Sent Address List.

Access Entries from Received Calls

- 1                                             



- 4 Tap phone type icon to select a number → Dialing starts.
Tap for video calls.

Phone Book Settings

Customizing Handset Response

Set different ringtones, images, etc. per entry item or Group.

Indicators

The following indicators appear for set items.



- Ringtone (Incoming Calls)
- Ringtone (Mail)
- Illumination (Incoming Calls)
- Illumination (Mail)
- Vibrator (Incoming Calls)
- Vibrator (Mail)
- Incoming Image (Calls)
- Outgoing Message (Incoming Calls)

To Customize by Phone Number/E-mail Address

<Example> Set a ringtone for incoming voice calls

- 1 [Entry Details] → → Select a phone number → → **Ring Tone/Image** →
- 2 **Voice Call (Recv.)** →
- 3 **Ring Tone** → → Select a ringtone type → (→ Select a folder →) (→ Select a ringtone →)

To Customize by Group

<Example> Set illumination for incoming messages

- 1 [Phone Book Entry List] → → **Group Setting** →
- 2 Select a group → → **Ring Tone/Image** →
- 3 **Mail (Recv.)** →
- 4 **Illumination** → → Select a pattern →



Note

- Custom Settings are unavailable for secret Phone Book entries.
- Custom Settings are canceled when entry is set as secret.

Tip

- To cancel Custom Settings, select an item with ★ and press

Restricting Calls to/from Specific Phone Numbers

Restrict calls to/from specific numbers in Phone Book. This can help manage personal calls and prevent nuisance calls.

1 [Entry Details] ⇨ ⇨ **Select a phone number** ⇨ ⇨ **Restrictions** ⇨

2 Enter Security Code ⇨

3 Select a restriction type ⇨

Restrict Dialing:
Permit outgoing calls to only one number. Note that the number can only be dialed from Phone Book.

Call Rejection:

Restrict incoming calls from a specified number.

Call Acceptation:

Receive incoming calls only from a specified number.

Tip

- ★ indicates currently set restriction; to cancel, select the setting and press .

When *Restrict Dialing* is Set

The following operations are disabled:

- Dialing by Keypad
- Dialing from Received Calls
- Calling from Phone Book (except: calling specified number in Phone Book)

Tip

- When *Restrict Dialing* is set, all records on Redial, Dialed Calls and Sent Address List are deleted.
- Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when *Restrict Dialing* is set.
- If you change or delete the specified number, the set restriction is canceled. Cancel *Restrict Dialing* to edit or delete.

Setting Secret Entries

Prevent others from accessing certain Phone Book entries.

- Phone Book entries set as secret only appear in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode (P. 4-7).

1 [Entry Details] ⇨ ⇨ **Set Secret** ⇨

Tip

- To cancel Secret Setting: [Entry Details] ⇨ ⇨ **Release Secret** ⇨
- Entries saved while Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode is active are saved as secret entries.
- When a Tomo-Den entry is set as a secret entry, the entry's Tomo-Den setting is canceled.

Managing USIM Phone Book

Phone Book entries can be copied between handset and USIM Card.

1 ⇨ **Tools** ⇨ ⇨ **USIM Operation** ⇨ ⇨ **Enter Security Code** ⇨



2 Copy → ● → **Phone** → **USIM** or **USIM** → **Phone** → ● → **Phone Book** → ●

3 Search Phone Book

4 Select an entry → ●
Repeat this step to specify other entries.

5 ☐ → **YES** → ●

Note

- Items that cannot be saved to USIM Phone Book are not copied.
- Phone Book entries set as secret cannot be copied.
- All handset transmissions are unavailable while copying entries.

More Features

Advanced

Creating Entries

- Save a Postal Code, Address & Memo
- Save Location Information
- Save Birthday
- Change Entry Number

▶ P. 2-32)

Phone Book Search

- Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List
- Change Font Size
- Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order
- Compose an S! Mail from Phone Book
- Compose an SMS Message from Phone Book

▶ P. 2-32)

Managing Phone Book

- Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item
- Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item
- Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
- Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
- Check Number of Phone Book Entries
- Edit a Phone Book Entry
- Copy a Phone Book Entry
- Check Location Information
- Send Entries by Mail
- Delete Entries
- Delete Items from an Entry

- Delete an Entry from USIM Card

▶ P. 2-33)

Customize

Phone Book

- Set Preferred Search Method
- Change Group Name

▶ P. 14-11)



Overview

Back up handset Phone Book to server.

- Separate subscription required.
- See SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>) for details.
- Service subscription activates **Auto Sync Settings** during network information retrieval. Synchronization will automatically begin 10 minutes after you edit Phone Book.
- Even if **Auto Sync Settings** is set to **OFF**, it returns to **Synchronize** after network information is retrieved again.
- After unsubscribing, make sure that **Auto Sync Settings** is set to **OFF**.

Note

- Fully charge battery beforehand.
- When **Auto Sync Settings** is **ON**, editing entries automatically synchronizes, backs up or downloads updated entries. Packet transmission fees are incurred.
- All data in the server Phone Book will be deleted if **Synchronize**, **Sync From Client** or **Backup** is performed after deleting all data in handset Phone Book.
- All data in handset Phone Book will be deleted if **Synchronize**, **Sync From Server** or **Restore** is performed after deleting all data in the server Phone Book.
- The following Phone Book items are not synchronized.
 - Ring Tone
 - Illumination
 - Vibrator
 - Incoming Call Image

Using S! Addressbook Back-up

Synchronizing Phone Book

Connect to Phone Book backed up on server and bring it up to date with handset's Phone Book.

- The first time you synchronize will be in **Synchronize** regardless of the setting.
- Synchronization can be any of the following types.

Synchronize	Synchronize handset Phone Book and server Phone Book. Both Phone Books are synchronized with the newest information.
Sync From Client	Copy updated information to server Phone Book.
Sync From Server	Copy update information to handset Phone Book.
Backup	Back up handset Phone Book to server (note that Server Phone Book is deleted).

Restore	Restore server Phone Book to handset (note that handset Phone Book is deleted).
---------	---

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **S! Addressbook Back-up** ⇒



S! Addressbook Back-up Window

2 **Start Sync** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter Security Code** ⇒

3 **Select type of synchronization** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Synchronization starts. Synchronization results appear after completion.

4



Checking Synchronize Log

- 1 [S! Addressbook Back-up] window
⇒ **Sync Log** ⇒  ⇒ Select an
item ⇒ 

More Features

Advanced

- S! Addressbook Back-up
 - Delete Synchronize Log

[▶ P. 2-34](#)

Customize

- S! Addressbook Back-up
 - Set Auto Synchronize
 - Set Auto Synchronize Off
 - Check Auto Synchronize Settings

[▶ P. 14-11](#)



Main Menu

Change Main Menu Theme

→ → Select a pattern → ● (→ YES or NO → ●)

Switch to Simple Menu

→ → Simple Menu → ● (→ YES or NO → ●)

In Simple Menu, font size is larger and menu options are limited to basic ones.

Temporarily Change Design Theme of Main Menu

→ → Select a theme →

Next time you open Main Menu, default Main Menu returns.

Desktop Icons

Delete Notifications

● → Press and hold

Some notifications remain.

Edit Title of a Desktop Icon

● → Select an icon → → Edit Title → ●
● → Enter title → ●

Change Icon Image

● → Select an icon → → CHG Icon Image → ● → Select Icon Image → ● → Select a folder → ● → Select a file → ●
 To reset icon image, select Default Icon Image and press ●.

Check Icon Information

● → Select an icon → → Icon Info Setting → ●

Change Order of Desktop Icons

● → Select an icon → → Sort → ● → YES → ● → → Select a position → ●

Delete Desktop Icons

● → Select an icon → → Delete → ●
● To Select Delete This → Delete This → ● → YES → ●
● To Select Delete selected → Delete selected → ● → Select icons → ● → → YES → ●
● To Select Delete All → Delete All → ● → YES → ●

Reset Desktop Icons

● → → Reset Desktop → ● → YES → ●

Change Theme of Desktop Icons

● → → Change Desktop → ● → Select a theme → ● → YES → ●



Text Entry

Start Here

[Text Entry] window P. 2-12

Functions Before Entering Text

Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case

[Text Entry] window → → **Lower Case** or **Upper Case** → ●

Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte

[Text Entry] window → → **Single-Byte** or **Double-Byte** → ●

Functions While Entering Text

Cycle Characters in Reverse Order

[Text Entry] window → Input a character →

This procedure is available in 5-touch mode.

Undo Last Operation

[Text Entry] window → Press and hold

Move Cursor to Top/End of Text

[Text Entry] window → → **Jump** → ●
→ **To Beginning** or **To End** → ●

Overwrite & Insert Modes

[Text Entry] window → → **Overwrite** or **Insert** → ●

Text entry windows always open in **Insert** mode.

Insert Line Feed

[Text Entry] window →

Press to add a space at the end of text.

Input a Space

[Text Entry] window → → **Space** → ●

Press to add a space at the end of text.

Use Dictionary

[Text Entry] window → → **Refer Dic.** → ●

- To Enter a Word
 - **Enter Word** → ● → Enter word → ●
 - Select a dictionary → ● → Select a word → ●
 - ● → Read descriptions of the word
- To Select Area
 - **Select Area** → ● → Move cursor to beginning of word → ● → Move cursor to end of word → ● → Select a dictionary → ●
 - ● → Select a word → ● → Read descriptions of the word
- To Enter a Word from Search History
 - **Reference History** → ● → Select a word → ● → Select a dictionary → ● → Select a word → ● → Read descriptions of the word



Quote Text

[Text Entry] window → → **Quote Data** → ●

- To Quote from a Phone Book Entry
→ **Quote Phonebook** → ● → Search Phone Book → Select a data item to quote text from → ● →
- To Quote from Account Details
→ **Account Details** → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → Select a data item → ● →
- To Scan Text by Text Reader
→ **Text Reader** → ● → Scan text with camera →
- To Scan Bar Code by Bar Code Reader
→ **Bar Code Reader** → ● → Scan a bar code with camera → ●

Use Kuten Codes

[Text Entry] window → → **Kuten Code** → ● → Enter kuten codes (P. 15-13)

Templates

Start Here

[Templates (Common phrases)] window P. 2-16
 [Templates List] P. 2-16

Edit a Folder Name

[Templates (Common phrases)] window → Select a folder → → **Edit Folder Name** → ● → Enter folder name → ●

Reset a Folder Name

[Templates (Common phrases)] window → Select a folder → → **Reset Name** → ● → **YES** → ●

Edit Templates

[Templates List] → Select a template → → **Edit** → ● → Edit phrase → ●

Reset Templates

[Templates List] → Select a template →

- To Select **Delete This**
→ **Delete This** → ● → **YES** → ●
- To Select **Delete All**
→ **Delete All** → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → **YES** → ●

User entries are deleted, and preinstalled templates return to default.

Dictionaries

Start Here

[Own Dictionary] window P. 2-16
 [Downloaded Dictionary] window P. 2-17

Own Dictionary

Edit Entries

[Own Dictionary] window → Select an entry → → Edit word → ● → Edit reading → ●



Delete Entries

[Own Dictionary] window ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ ⇨ **Delete** ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete This*
⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete selected*
⇨ *Delete selected* ⇨ ● ⇨ Select entries
⇨ ● ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete All*
⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code
⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Downloaded Dictionaries

Edit Title

[Downloaded Dictionary] window ⇨
Select a dictionary ⇨ ⇨ **Edit Title** ⇨ ●
⇨ Edit title ⇨ ●

View Information

[Downloaded Dictionary] window ⇨
Select a dictionary ⇨ ⇨ **Dictionary Info**
⇨ ●

Delete Dictionaries

[Downloaded Dictionary] window ⇨
Select a dictionary ⇨ ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete This*
⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete All*
⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code
⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Phone Book

Start Here

[Phone Book Entry] windowP. 2-21

[Phone Book Entry List]P. 2-22

[Entry Details]P. 2-22

Creating Entries

Save a Postal Code, Address & Memo

[Phone Book Entry] window ⇨ or
⇨ ● ⇨ Enter content ⇨ ●

Save Location Information

[Phone Book Entry] window ⇨ ⇨ ●
⇨ **From Position Loc.** or **From Location History** ⇨ ● (⇨ Select location information ⇨ ●)

To check location information, select **Location Info Detail** and press ●.

To delete location information, select **Delete Location Info** and press ●.

Save Birthday

[Phone Book Entry] window ⇨ ⇨ ●
⇨ Enter date of birth ⇨ ●

Change Entry Number

[Phone Book Entry] window ⇨ **No** ⇨ ●
⇨ Change entry number ⇨ ●

Phone Book Search

Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ ⇨ **Change Display** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Alphabet, Memory No.** or **Group** ⇨ ●



Change Font Size

[Phone Book Entry List] / [Entry Details] ⇨
 [☰] ⇨ **Font Setting** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Standard
 Font, Big Font** (or **Small Font**) ⇨ ●

Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order

[Entry Details] ⇨ Select a phone
 number/e-mail address ⇨ [☰] ⇨ **Move to
 Top** ⇨ ●

☞ This procedure is available when more than
 one phone number/e-mail address is saved to
 a Phone Book entry.

Compose an S! Mail from Phone Book

[Entry Details] ⇨ ☺ ⇨ Select an e-mail
 address ⇨ ● ⇨ **Compose S! Mail**

Compose an SMS Message from Phone Book

[Entry Details] ⇨ ☺ ⇨ Select a phone
 number ⇨ [☰] ⇨ **Compose SMS** ⇨ ● ⇨
 Compose SMS message

Managing Phone Book

Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ [☰] ⇨ **Ring
 Tone/Image** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an item with ★
 ⇨ ●

☞ Select another item with ★ to view that
 setting.

Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ [☰] ⇨ **Ring
 Tone/Image** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an item with ★
 ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an item with ★ ⇨ [☰] ⇨
Release Settings ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

☞ When the same ringtone/image is set for
 multiple entries, canceling the setting for one
 entry cancels setting for all entries.

Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ [☰] ⇨
Restrictions ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code
 ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a restriction type with ★ ⇨
 [☰] ⇨ **Check Settings** ⇨ ●

Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ [☰] ⇨
Restrictions ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code
 ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a restriction type with ★ ⇨
 [☰] ⇨ **Release Settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Check Number of Phone Book Entries

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ [☰] ⇨ **No. of
 Phone Book** ⇨ ●

Edit a Phone Book Entry

[Entry Details] ⇨ [☰] ⇨ **Edit Phone Book**
 ⇨ ● ⇨ Edit each item ⇨ [☰] ⇨ **YES** ⇨
 ●

☞ Select **No** and edit the entry number. The
 edited entry is saved as a new entry and the
 original entry remains as before.

Copy a Phone Book Entry

[Entry Details] ⇨ [☰] ⇨ **Copy to USIM** or
Copy from USIM ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Check Location Information

[Entry Details] ⇨ ☺ ⇨ Select location
 information ⇨ [☰] ⇨ **Read Map** ⇨ ●
 (⇨ **Send or No Confirmation** ⇨ ●)



Send Entries by Mail

[Phone Book Entry List] → → **Attach to Mail** → → Compose S! Mail →

Delete Entries

[Phone Book Entry List] → Select an entry → → **Delete Data** →

- To Select *Delete This*
→ *Delete This* → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete selected*
→ *Delete selected* → → Select entries → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete All*
→ *Delete All* → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** → → **YES** →

Delete Items from an Entry

[Entry Details] → → Select an item → → **Delete Data** → → **Delete Phone No., Delete Mail Add., Delete Address, Delete Loc. Info, Delete Birthday, Delete Memorandums or Delete Image** → → **YES** →

Delete an Entry from USIM Card

→ **Tools** → → **USIM Operation** → → Enter Security Code → → **Delete** → → **USIM** → → **Phone Book** → → Search Phone Book → Select an entry → → → **YES** →

S! Addressbook Back-up

Start Here

[S! Addressbook Back-up] windowP. 2-27

Delete Synchronize Log

[S! Addressbook Back-up] window → **Sync Log** → → Select Log →

- To Select *Delete This*
→ *Delete This* → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete selected*
→ *Delete selected* → → Select Log → → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete All*
→ *Delete All* → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

Calling



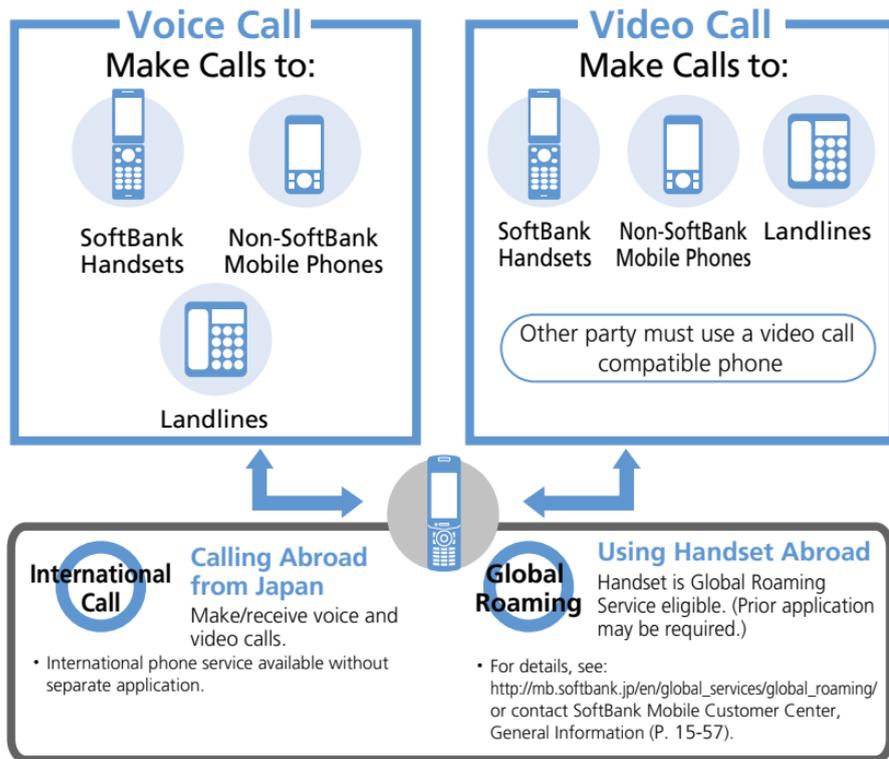
Overview	3-2	Advanced Features	3-18
Voice Call	3-3	Outgoing Call Functions	3-18
Making Voice Calls	3-3	International Calls	3-18
International Calls	3-4	Handling Incoming Calls	3-18
Answering Voice Calls	3-4	Engaged Call Operations	3-19
Recording the Other Party's Voice	3-5	Answering Machine	3-20
Answering Machine	3-5	Call Logs	3-20
Playing Messages	3-6	Speed Dial	3-21
Video Call	3-8	Optional Services	3-21
Video Call Window	3-8		
Making Video Calls	3-8		
Answering Video Calls	3-9		
Call Logs	3-11		
Dialing from Call Logs	3-11		
Call Time & Cost	3-12		
Speed Dialing	3-13		
Speed Dial	3-13		
Tomo-Den	3-13		
Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming) ..	3-15		
Calling Japan and Other Countries	3-15		
Calling within the Same Country	3-15		
Optional Services	3-16		
Overview	3-16		

3



Overview

Voice call and video call are available on handset.



Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with Softbank 3G handsets.

(Emergency Location Report)

931N reports Location Information based on GPS signals. When GPS is unavailable, positioning is calculated based on radio station signals.

- Registration and transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location and signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when:
 - The call is placed without Caller ID (e.g. prefixed by 184). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
 - Abroad (International Roaming)
- Location Information via GPS is unavailable when:
 - Dial Lock is set (P. 4-3)
 - Positioning is calculated via radio stations.

Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

- Restrict Dialing (P. 2-25)
- Keypad Lock (P. 4-4)
- Set Max Cost Limit (P. 14-13)
- Emission OFF Mode (P. 4-6)
- PIN1 Code Entry Set (P. 4-2)



Making Voice Calls

1 Enter phone number



Phone Number Entry Window

■ Correcting Misentries

→ to scroll cursor → to delete (press and hold to delete all numbers to the left) → Reenter number(s)

■ Deleting Phone Number

→

2



Voice Call Window

3 to end call

Note

- The other party may hear a short beep when to , or are pressed during a call.

Tip

- In Share Style, connect stereo earphone-microphone to use voice calling.
- Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- When you hear a busy tone, the other party is on another line.
- When you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached, the other party's mobile phone is off or is out of signal range.
- When you hear a message asking for your caller ID, call again with your number revealed.
- After Display backlight turns off during a call, if no keys are pressed for about two minutes, Display goes off and handset enters power saving mode regardless of Lighting setting for Backlight (P. 14-5). Handset can be operated in power saving mode in the same way as when Display is lit.

Operations during Voice Calls

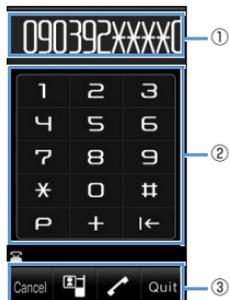
Adjust Earpiece Volume	Press and hold
	or
Hold Call	



Voice Call

In Touch Style

- 1 77-.
- 2 **Phone** → **Direct Input**
Keypad appears.



Phone Number Entry Window (Touch Style)

①	Entered number appears.
②	to : Enter phone number. : Enter "p" (pause). : Delete phone number.
③	: Cancel operation. : Make video call. : Make voice call. : Return to Standby.

- 3 Enter phone number →

- 4 to end call

Operations during Voice Calls

Adjust Earpiece Volume	77- Or UL/PN
Hold Call	
Toggle Device	(handset→Bluetooth® device) or (Bluetooth® device→handset)
Toggle Hyper Clear Voice	→ →

Tip

- Change to Communication Style to use handsfree calling.

International Calls

Application not required.

- 1 Enter phone number → → **Int'l call** →
- 2 Select a country code → → Select an international prefix number → →
- 3 to end call

Answering Voice Calls

- 1 When a call arrives →
- 2 to end call

In Touch Style

- 1 When a call arrives →
 - To Place call on Hold →
- 2 to end call



Reject/Forward Calls

Tap to access Pallet for arriving call.



①	Call Rejection Call is rejected.
②	Call Forwarding Call is sent to forwarding number when <i>Call Forward</i> is ON.

Tip

- Change to Communication Style to use handsfree calling.

Recording the Other Party's Voice

- 1 Press and hold during a call**
A short beep sounds through the earpiece and recording starts. When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound.
To stop recording, press or press and hold .

Answering Machine

Record caller's messages on handset when you are unable to answer voice or video calls.

Setting Answering Machine

- 1** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Incoming Call** ⇒ ⇒ **Answering Machine** ⇒
- 2** **ON** ⇒ ⇒ **Select an outgoing message** ⇒
- 3** **Enter ring time**

Tip

- When Voice Mail or Call Forward is activated, set a shorter ring time for Answering Machine than that for Voice Mail or Call Forward.
- Answering Machine can be set or canceled by pressing and holding in Standby.
- Answering Machine is unavailable when power is off, in a place with no signal reception, or in Emission OFF Mode. Use Voice Mail instead (see P. 3-16).

When a Call Arrives

Answering Machine activates after the set ring time. Outgoing message plays, and the caller's voice/video message is recorded. Handset returns to Standby when recording is complete. Answering Machine notification and Display indicator appear. The indicator shows the number of messages.



■ **To Answer Call during Recording**





Activate When a Call Arrives

Activate Answering Machine when unable to answer an incoming call. Answering Machine setting returns, after message is recorded.

1 When a call arrives → **CLEAR** or **177- OR 177-PLAN**

Answering Machine is activated and starts recording.

Note

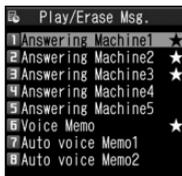
- Answering Machine cannot be activated when memory is full.

Tip

- Alternatively, press **#** when a call arrives. When answering with **#**, handset enters Manner Mode.

Playing Messages

1 **Select notification** or



Play/Delete Voice Message Window

Items with a message recorded are indicated by ★.

2 **Select a message** →

Tip

- To delete a message while playing it:
177- OR 177-PLAN → **Erase** → → **YES** →

Operations during Playback

Play Next Message	177- OR 177-PLAN
Stop	or CLEAR
Return a Voice Call	
Return a Video Call	

Tip

- Pressing **CLEAR** in Standby also plays recorded voice messages. When there is a voice memo but no voice message, the voice memo plays.
- To play voice messages from Main Menu:
MENU → **Tools** → → **Play/Erase Msg.** →

Operations during Video Message Playback

Play Previous/Next Message	
Adjust Volume	 177- OR 177-PLAN
Pause/Play	
Stop	CLEAR
Return a Voice Call	
Return a Video Call	

Tip

- To play video messages from Main Menu:
MENU → **Tools** → → **Play/Erase VC Msg.** →



More Features

Advanced

Outgoing Call Functions

- Show/Hide Caller ID
- Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers) **(▶ P. 3-18)**

International Calls

- Enter “+” to Call Abroad **(▶ P. 3-18)**

Handling Incoming Calls

- Reject Calls
- Place Calls on Hold
- Forward Calls
- Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center **(▶ P. 3-18)**

Engaged Call Operations

- Handsfree
- Toggle Sound Output Between Handset and Bluetooth® Device
- Make Other Party Clearer to Hear (Hyper Clear Voice)
- Send Touch Tones **(▶ P. 3-19)**

Answering Machine

- Delete Recorded Messages **(▶ P. 3-20)**

Customize

Outgoing Calls

- Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers
- Save Touch Tones
- Set Numbers after “*” as Sub Address **(▶ P. 14-11)**

Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Call Image
- Set Image or Video for Incoming Call **(▶ P. 14-4)**

International Calls

- Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with “+”
- Change a Country Code
- Save an International Access Code **(▶ P. 14-12)**

Incoming Call Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set Illumination Pattern
- Adjust Illumination Color
- Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls
- Set an Incoming Call Image
- Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls **(▶ P. 14-7)**

Answering Incoming Calls

- Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key
- Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key **(▶ P. 14-9)**

Call Settings

- Set Reconnection Tone
- Set Noise Reduction
- Set Weak Signal Alarm
- Set Clarity of Other Party Voice
- Automatically Record During Voice Call
- Change Color of Illumination While Calling
- Set Outgoing Message while Call is on Hold
- Set Closing Sound Off
- Continue Call With Handset Closed
- End Call By Closing Handset **(▶ P. 14-12)**

Sounds

- Record Sound to Set as Ringtone or Outgoing Message
- Play Recorded Sound
- Delete Recorded Sound **(▶ P. 14-10)**

Earphone-Microphone

- Audio Output
- Microphone Setting
- Answer Calls Automatically
- Save a Phone Number to Dial with an Earphone-Microphone **(▶ P. 14-10)**



Video Call Window



Video Call Indicators

	Mute
	Hyper Clear Voice High
	Hyper Clear Voice Low
	Transmitting Audio
	Transmission Failed
	Transmitting Video
	Transmission Failed
	Sending Camera Image
	Substitute Image
	Handsfree ON
	Handsfree OFF
	Visual Check

Making Video Calls

1 Enter phone number



Phone Number Entry Window

■ Correcting Mistentries

→ to scroll cursor → to delete (press and hold to delete all numbers to the left) → Reenter number(s)

■ Deleting Phone Number

→

2



Video Call Window

3 to end call

Note

- The other party may hear a short beep when to , or are pressed during a call.

Tip

- In Share Style or Touch Style, connect stereo earphone-microphone to use video calling.
- Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- Video calls made to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) are automatically switched to voice calls.
- An error message with a possible cause appears when a video call fails to be connected.
- Only Front Camera image is sent during video call.



Operations during Video Calls

Adjust Earpiece Volume	or press and hold or
Hold Call	
Toggle Main and Sub Window Images	toggles Main window image as follows: Other party's image → Your image → Other party's image (sub window off) → Your image (sub window off)
Zoom In/Out Outgoing Camera Image	
Mute Audio	or press and hold . To cancel mute, press again.

In Touch Style

- Keypad appears.
- Phone** ⇒ **Direct Input**
Keypad appears.
- Enter phone number** ⇒

Answering Video Calls

- When a video call arrives ⇒
- to end call

Tip

- Press when a video call arrives to send substitute image and answer video call.

In Touch Style

- When a video call arrives ⇒ Substitute image is sent and video call is answered.
To Place call on Hold
⇒

Reject/Forward Calls

Tap to access Pallet for arriving call.



①	Call Rejection Call is rejected.
②	Call Forwarding Call is sent to forwarding number when <i>Call Forward</i> is ON.



More Features

Advanced

Outgoing Call Functions

- Show/Hide Caller ID
- Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

(▶ P. 3-18)

Handling Incoming Calls

- Reject Calls
- Place Calls on Hold
- Forward Calls

(▶ P. 3-18)

Engaged Call Operations

- Handsfree
- Toggle Sound Output Between Handset and Bluetooth® Device
- Make Other Party Clearer to Hear (Hyper Clear Voice)
- Check Own Appearance
- Set Image Quality
- Adjust Brightness
- Change White Balance
- Change Color Tone
- Backlight Illumination Time

(▶ P. 3-19)

Customize

Outgoing Calls

- Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers
- Set Numbers after “*” as Sub Address

(▶ P. 14-11)

Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Call Image

(▶ P. 14-4)

Incoming Call Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set Illumination Pattern
- Adjust Illumination Color
- Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls
- Set an Incoming Call Image
- Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls

(▶ P. 14-7)

Answering Incoming Calls

- Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key
- Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key

(▶ P. 14-9)

Call Settings

- Set Reconnection Tone
- Set Noise Reduction
- Set Weak Signal Alarm
- Set Clarity of Other Party Voice
- Change Color of Illumination While Calling
- Set Outgoing Message while Call is on Hold
- Set Closing Sound Off
- Continue Call With Handset Closed
- End Call By Closing Handset

(▶ P. 14-12)

Earphone-Microphone

- Audio Output
- Microphone Setting
- Answer Calls Automatically
- Save a Phone Number to Dial with an Earphone-Microphone

(▶ P. 14-10)

Video Calls

- Set Outgoing Image during Video Calls
- Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails
- Set an Image to Appear in Main Window
- Reverse Front Camera Image
- Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls

(▶ P. 14-13)



Dialing from Call Logs

Phone numbers and dates and times of incoming and outgoing calls are saved on handset as call logs. Access call logs to return calls quickly.

Call Log Indicators

The following indicators appear in Redial, Dialed Calls and Received Calls windows.

Voice Calls	
	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed
International Calls	
	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed
Video Calls	
	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed
International Video Calls	
	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed

	Answering Machine
	Voice Messages
	Video Messages
	Packet Transmission
	Outgoing & Incoming Calls Appears when outside the GMT+09 time zone.

Redial/Received Calls

1 or



Redial Window



Received Calls Window

2 Select a record or

Select a Redial or Received Calls record and press to check its details.

In Touch Style

- 1
- 2 **Phone** **Redial or Received Calls**
- 3 Tap a record or

Dialed Calls

- 1 **Own Data** **Dialed Calls**



Dialed Calls Window

- 2 Select a record or
Select a Dialed Calls record and press to check its details.



Checking Number of Missed Calls

1 → **Own Data** → ● →

Received Calls → ●

The total number of incoming calls, number of missed calls, and number of unchecked missed calls appear.

2 **All Calls or Missed Calls** → ●

Tip

- Illumination flashes for missed calls. Select the "Missed Call" icon to check details or press and hold to turn off illumination.

Call Time & Cost

Check the total and last call times and costs.

Call cost and cost limit may be unavailable depending on your subscription.

1 → **Settings** → ● → **Call Time/Charge** → ● → **Call Data** → ●

Tip

- Use indicated call times and costs only as a guide. The actual call time and cost may be different. Your handset may not indicate call costs depending on the service you subscribe. Indicated costs do not include consumption tax.
- When the last or total call time exceeds 199 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting restarts from zero seconds.

More Features

Advanced

Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

- Change Font Size
- Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)
- Delete Records

P. 3-20

Call Time & Cost

- Reset Total Call Time
- Reset Total Call Cost

P. 3-20

Customize

Incoming Call Alerts

- Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls

P. 14-8

Checking Call Logs

- Notify Missed Calls with Tone (When Pressed)
- Change Colors of Names, Phone Numbers and E-mail Addresses in Call and Message Log Windows

P. 14-9

Call Costs

- Set Auto Reset of Total Call Cost
- Set a Maximum Call Cost Limit

P. 14-13



Speed Dial

Enter Phone Book entry number (000 to 009) and press for direct access to that entry.

- If a Phone Book entry has more than one phone number, handset dials the first number.

1 0 to 9 → or

Tomo-Den

Save up to five Phone Book entries to Tomo-Den for quick access.

- Tomo-Den is unavailable in Secret Data Only Mode.
- Tomo-Den is available in Secret Mode, however secret entries cannot be saved to Tomo-Den.

Saving Entries to Tomo-Den

1



Tomo-Den Window

2 → Select a tab →

- ▶ To Search from Phone Book *View Phone Book* → → Search Phone Book → Select an entry →
- ▶ To Enter the Information *Direct input* → → Enter items →

3 Select a phone number or e-mail address →

When a checkbox is selected, other numbers/addresses become grayed and cannot be selected. To select another number/address, first cancel the currently selected checkbox.

4

Using Tomo-Den

1

2 → Select an entry → **CALL**, **MAIL** or **VIDEO CALL** →

Tip

- Alternatively, press 1 to 5 in Step 2 to select a recipient.

In Touch Style

1

2 **Phone** → **Tomo-Den**

3 Tap tab to select an entry → **CALL**, **MAIL** or **VIDEO CALL**

For **MAIL**, change to Communication Style to compose message.

Tip

- Connect stereo earphone-microphone to use video calling.



More Features

Advanced

Speed Dial

- Cancel Entries from Tomo-Den
- Change Tomo-Den Entry Image
- To Send an S! Mail to All Tomo-Den Entries

(▶ P. 3-21)



Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming)

Make calls while overseas.

- Global Roaming Service may require prior application. Details are available online at http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/global_roaming/ or contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-57).
- 931N is compatible with 3G and GSM networks.

Calling Japan and Other Countries

1 Press and hold

"+" is entered.

2 Enter country code and phone number (omit first "0" from area code) ⇨

Tip

- Do not omit the first "0" from area code when calling Italy.

Calling within the Same Country

1 Enter phone number with area code ⇨

Do not omit "0" from area code.
Country code not required.

More Features

Customize

Global Roaming

- Set Operator
- Search Available Operator
- Set Priority for Operators
- Change Network
- Show Operator Name While Roaming

▶ P. 14-14)



Overview

The following services are available with your handset.

Call Forward	Forward calls to a preset phone number.
Voice Mail	Forward calls to Voice Mail Center when unable to answer a call. Missed Call Notification Notification (SMS) arrives for missed calls while handset was off, out of range or engaged, etc.
Call Waiting*	Place the current call on hold to answer another incoming call. Talk with two parties alternately.
Group Calling*	Call others during a call and talk with multiple parties simultaneously.
Call Barring	Select whether to restrict incoming and outgoing calls and SMS.
Caller ID	Select whether to show or hide your number when making calls.

* Separate application is required.

Activating Call Forward

<Example> Forward calls to a specified number after a set ring time

- 1 MENU → Settings → ● → ● → **Optional Services** → ● → ● → **Voice Mail/Divert** → ●



Voice Mail/Divert Window

- 2 **Divert ON** → ● → YES → ● → ● → **Voice/Video Calls, Voice Calls or Video Calls** → ● → ●

▶ To Enter Phone Number
Enter phone number → ●

▶ To Search from Phone Book
① → Search Phone Book → Select an entry → ● → Select a phone number → ● (twice)

- 3 **No Answer** → ● → Select a ring time → ●

To forward calls immediately, select **Always** and press ●.

Tip

- If **No Answer** is set, press [] to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded. If **Always** is set, handset does not ring/vibrate and all calls are forwarded to the preset number.
- Call Forward and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously. Call Forward for video calls is only available with Voice Mail.
- If you activate Call Forward when Voice Mail has already been set, Voice Mail is canceled.

Activating Voice Mail

<Example> Forward calls to Voice Mail Center after a set ring time

- 1 [Voice Mail/Divert] window → ● → **Voice Mail ON** → ● → YES → ●

- 2 **No Answer** → ● → Select a ring time → ●

To forward calls to Voice Mail Center immediately, select **Always** and press ●.



Tip

- If *No Answer* is set, press to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded to Voice Mail Center. If *Always* is set, handset does not ring or vibrate and all calls are forwarded to Voice Mail Center.
- Voice Mail and Call Forward cannot be set simultaneously. Voice Mail is only available with Call Forward for video calls.
- If you activate Voice Mail when Call Forward has already been set, Call Forward is canceled.

Missed Call Notification

SMS notification informs you of missed calls while handset was off, out of range, engaged, etc.



Follow voice guidance.

To Play Messages

- 1** [Voice Mail/Divert] window ⇨
Play Messages ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Canceling Call Forward & Voice Mail

- 1** [Voice Mail/Divert] window ⇨
Voice Mail/Divert OFF ⇨ ● ⇨
YES ⇨ ●

More Features

Advanced

Call Forward & Voice Mail

- Delete Icons for Notifying Recorded Messages
 - Check Current Setting Status
- ▶ P. 3-21)

Call Waiting

- Set Call Waiting
 - Answer Incoming Calls during Calls
 - Check Current Setting Status
- ▶ P. 3-21)

Group Calling

- Hold Current Call to Make Another Call
 - Switch Parties
 - Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously
 - Talk with a Specific Party
 - End Call with a Specific Party
- ▶ P. 3-22)

Call Barring

- Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS
 - Cancel Call Barring
 - Change Network Password
 - Check Current Setting Status
- ▶ P. 3-22)

Caller ID

- Show/Hide Phone Number
 - Check Current Setting Status
- ▶ P. 3-22)



Outgoing Call Functions

Show/Hide Caller ID

Enter phone number → → **Notify Caller ID** → ● → **OFF, ON** or **Cancel Prefix** → ● → or

- Alternatively, enter "186" before the phone number to show your number, or "184" to hide your number.
- Show/hide Caller ID each time you dial from Phone Book or call logs (Redial, Dialed Calls or Received Calls).

Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

Enter phone number → → **Prefix Numbers** → ● → Select an item → ● → or

- Save area codes and country codes beforehand for quick access to prefixes.
- Add prefix from Phone Book entry, Redial, Dialed Calls or Received Calls windows.
- 国際発信** (International Dialing Code, 0046010), **184** and **186** are set by default.

International Calls

Enter "+" to Call Abroad

Press and hold → Enter country code → Enter area code → Enter phone number → → **Dial** → ●

- "+" appears when you press and hold , indicating that the international code set in **Auto Int'l Call Set.** is entered.

Handling Incoming Calls

Voice & Video Calls

Reject Calls

When a call arrives → → **Call Rejection** → ●

Place Calls on Hold

When a call arrives → → To answer call →
 Press again to end the call on hold.

Forward Calls

When a call arrives → → **Call Forwarding** → ●

- This procedure is available when Call Forward has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.

Voice Calls

Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center

When a call arrives → → **Call Forwarding** → ●

- This procedure is available when Voice Mail has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.



Engaged Call Operations

Start Here

[Voice Call] window P. 3-3

[Video Call] window..... P. 3-8

Voice & Video Calls

Handsfree

[Voice Call] window/ [Video Call] window
⇒ (⇒ YES ⇒ ●)

Press again to cancel handsfree mode.

Toggle Sound Output Between Handset and Bluetooth® Device

[Voice Call] window/ [Video Call] window
⇒ ⇒ Bluetooth/Phone ⇒ ●

Alternatively, press and hold during a voice call to toggle device.

Make Other Party Clearer to Hear (Hyper Clear Voice)

[Voice Call] window/ [Video Call] window
⇒

Press to toggle setting High → Off OFF → Low.

Unavailable when handsfree is On or when an external device (ex. stereo earphone-microphone) is connected.

Voice Calls

Send Touch Tones

[Voice Call] window ⇒ (twice) ⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Dialing ⇒ ● ⇒ Pause Dial ⇒ ● (three times)

- To send touch tones all at once:
 - ⇒ Press and hold ⇒ Send at one time ⇒ ●

Each time you press , a touch tone sequence until "p" (pause) is sent.

Save touch tones in advance (P. 14-11).

Video Calls

Check Own Appearance

[Video Call] window ⇒ ⇒ Visual Check ⇒ ●

appears and substitute image is sent during visual check.

To end visual check:

[Video Call] window ⇒ ⇒ Visual Check Off ⇒ ●

Set Image Quality

[Video Call] window ⇒ ⇒ V. Call Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Visual Prefer. ⇒ ● ⇒

Select an item ⇒ ●

Available when sending camera image.

Adjust Brightness

[Video Call] window ⇒ ⇒ V. Call Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Brightness ⇒ ● ⇒

Select a level ⇒ ●

Available when sending camera image.

Change White Balance

[Video Call] window ⇒ ⇒ V. Call Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ White Balance ⇒ ● ⇒

Select an item ⇒ ●

Available when sending camera image.



Change Color Tone

[Video Call] window → → **V. Call Settings** → → **Color Mode Set** →

Select an item →

Available when sending camera image.

Backlight Illumination Time

[Video Call] window → → **Display Light** → → **All Time ON** or **Same as Backlight** →

Answering Machine

Start Here

[Play/Delete Voice Message] window
..... P. 3-6

Delete Recorded Messages

[Play/Delete Voice Message] window →
Select a message → → **Delete This**,
Delete Rec. Msg. or **Delete All** → → **YES**
→

Selecting **Delete All** also deletes a voice memo if it has been saved.

Call Logs

Start Here

[Redial] window.....P. 3-11
[Dialed Calls] window.....P. 3-11
[Received Calls] windowP. 3-11

Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

Change Font Size

[Redial] window, [Dialed Calls] window
or [Received Calls] window → → **Font Setting** → → **Standard Font** or **Big Font**
→

Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)

[Received Calls] window → → **Ring Time** →

Delete Records

[Redial] window, [Dialed Calls] window or
[Received Calls] window → → **Delete**
→

- Delete Selected Entry
→ **Delete This** → → **YES** →
 - Select Entries to Delete
→ **Delete selected** → → Select records
→ → **YES** →
 - Delete All Entries
→ **Delete All** → → Enter Security Code
→ → **YES** →
- Selecting **Delete All** in Redial window or Dialed Calls window deletes all records from both Redial and Dialed Calls.

Call Time & Cost

Reset Total Call Time

→ **Settings** → → **Call Time/Charge**
→ → **Reset Total** → → Enter
Security Code → → **Reset Total**
Duration → → **YES** →



Reset Total Call Cost

→ **Settings** → → **Call Time/Charge**
 → → **Reset Total** → → Enter
 Security Code → → **Reset Total Cost** →
 → **YES** → → Enter PIN2 →

Speed Dial

Start Here

[Tomo-Den] window P. 3-13

Cancel Entries from Tomo-Den

[Tomo-Den] window → → Select a tab
 →

- To Release Selected Entry
 → **Release This** → → **YES** →
- To Release All Entries
 → **Release All** → → Enter Security
 Code → → **YES** →

Change Tomo-Den Entry Image

[Tomo-Den] window → → Select a tab
 → → **Image** → → Select a folder
 → → Select an image →

To Send an S! Mail to All Tomo-Den Entries

[Tomo-Den] window → → **Broadcast
 Mail** → → Create S! Mail →

Optional Services

Start Here

[Voice Call] window P. 3-3

[Voice Mail/Divert] window P. 3-16

Call Forward & Voice Mail

Delete Icons for Notifying Recorded Messages

[Voice Mail/Divert] window → **Erase Icon**
 → → **YES** →

Check Current Setting Status

[Voice Mail/Divert] window → **Get Status**
 →

Call Waiting

Set Call Waiting

→ **Settings** → → **Optional Services**
 → → **Call Waiting** → → **ON or OFF**
 → → **YES** →

Answer Incoming Calls during Calls

[Voice Call] window → Call waiting tone
 sounds →

Press to toggle between two parties.

Check Current Setting Status

→ **Settings** → → **Optional Services**
 → → **Call Waiting** → → **Get Status**
 →



Group Calling

Hold Current Call to Make Another Call

[Voice Call] window → → Enter phone number →

To dial from Phone Book, press or , search Phone Book, select a number and then press .

To dial from Dialed/Received Calls, press or , select a phone number or name and then press .

Switch Parties

[Voice Call] window →

Press to toggle parties.

Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously

[Voice Call] window → While talking with one party → → **Join Multi Party** →

Talk with a Specific Party

[Voice Call] window → While talking with multiple parties → → **Select Ans. Call** → → Select a party →

The other parties are placed on hold while talking with the selected party.

End Call with a Specific Party

[Voice Call] window → While talking with multiple parties → → **Select Disc Call** → → Select a party →

Call Barring

Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS

→ **Settings** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Barring** → → **Outgoing Calls or Incoming Calls** → → Select an item → → **YES** → → Enter Network Password →

Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when Call Barring is set.

When **Bar All Outgoing Calls** or **Bar All Incoming Calls** is set, Call Forward and Voice Mail become unavailable.

When Call Forward or Voice Mail is set, Call Barring is unavailable.

If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-57).

Cancel Call Barring

→ **Settings** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Barring** → → **Cancel All Barring** → → **YES** → → Enter Network Password →

Change Network Password

→ **Settings** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Barring** → → **Set NW Password** → → **YES** → → Enter current Network Password → → Enter new Network Password → → Enter new Network Password again for confirmation →

Check Current Setting Status

→ **Settings** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Barring** → → **Get Status** → → Select an item →

Caller ID

Show/Hide Phone Number

→ **Settings** → → **Optional Services** → → **Caller ID Notification** → → **Activate/Deactivate** → → **ON** or **OFF** → → **YES** →



Advanced Features

Check Current Setting Status

 → Settings → ● → Optional Services
→ ● → Caller ID Notification → ● →
Get Status → ●

Security



PIN Settings	4-2
Setting PIN1 Entry	4-2
Changing PIN1/PIN2	4-2
Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use	4-3
Dial Lock	4-3
Original Lock	4-3
Disabling Keypad	4-4
Secure Remote Lock	4-5
IC Card Authentication	4-5
Prohibiting Outgoing/Incoming Calls	4-6
Rejecting Calls without Caller ID.....	4-6
Rejecting Calls from Unsaved Numbers	4-6
Delaying Ringtone	4-6
Emission OFF Mode	4-6
Secret Modes	4-7
Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode	4-7
Hiding Handset Data.....	4-7

4



Setting PIN1 Entry

Set to require PIN1 entry each time handset is turned on.

- 1 → **Settings** → → **Security**
→ → **PIN Setting** →
- 2 Enter Security Code →
- 3 **PIN1 Code Entry Set** → → **ON**
→ → Enter PIN1 →

Changing PIN1/PIN2

● *PIN1 Code Entry Set* must be set to *ON* before changing PIN1.

- 1 → **Settings** → → **Security**
→ → **PIN Setting** →
- 2 Enter Security Code →
- 3 **Change PIN1 Code** or **Change PIN2 Code** →
- 4 Enter current PIN1/PIN2 →
- 5 Enter new PIN1/PIN2 → →
Enter new PIN1/PIN2 again for confirmation →



Dial Lock

Prevent others from operating handset.

1 **Settings** → **Security** → **Lock**

2 Enter Security Code

3 **Dial Lock**

Note

- GPS positioning features unavailable during Dial Lock. Location Information is based on radio station signals for:
 - Emergency Location Report (P. 3-2)
 - Location Information is reported to corresponding agencies (110, 119 or 118) when emergency calls are placed.
 - 紛失ケータイ捜索サービス (Lost Mobile Phone Search)
- Location Navi is unavailable during Dial Lock.

Tip

- The following operations are possible even when Dial Lock is activated:
 - Power on/off
 - Calling emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118
 - Answering incoming voice/video calls

Canceling Dial Lock

1 Enter Security Code

If incorrect Security Code is entered, press **Cancel** and enter correct Security Code.

Tip

- If Security Code is incorrectly entered five times, handset powers off. Turn handset power on and enter correct Security Code.

Original Lock

Prevent others from accessing handset functions/data (e.g. Phone Book, Mail, etc). Select from three levels (high, medium or low) and customize as required.

- For IC Card Lock and Call Remote Lock, see P. 11-3.

Activating Original Lock

1 **Settings** → **Security** → **Lock**

2 Enter Security Code



Lock Window

3 Select an Original Lock level

Functions/data specified under the selected lock type are locked.

Tip

- To edit title:
 - [Lock] window → Select an Original Lock → **Edit Title** → Edit title
- Security Code entry is requested when accessing a locked function or data. Enter Security Code to unlock and access function/data. Original Lock setting returns when handset returns to Standby.
- *Dial/Sending Mail* and *Incoming/Mail Disp.* cannot be unlocked temporarily.



Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use

Customizing Original Lock

Set lock per function, group or category.

Some functions/groups are locked.

All functions in Group/Category are locked.

Customize by Function/Data

1 [Lock] window \Rightarrow Select an Original Lock \Rightarrow

2 Select a category \Rightarrow

3 Select a group \Rightarrow

4 Select an item \Rightarrow

Checked items are locked. To uncheck an item, select the item and press .

■ To Select All Functions
 \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select All \Rightarrow

■ To Deselect All Functions
 \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Release All \Rightarrow

5 (three times)

Customize by Category or Group

1 [Lock] window \Rightarrow Select an Original Lock \Rightarrow

2 Select a category (\Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select a group)

3 \Rightarrow Select \Rightarrow

To deselect, press , select *Release* and then press .

■ To Select Lock for Category or Group
 \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select All \Rightarrow

■ To Cancel Lock for Category or Group
 \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Release All \Rightarrow

4 (\Rightarrow)

Disabling Keypad

Set Keypad Lock to automatically lock handset keys. Customize Lock settings as required. Alternatively, press in Touch Style to lock keypad/Touch Panel operation.

Setting Keypad Lock

1 \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Security \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Keypad Lock \Rightarrow

2 Enter Security Code \Rightarrow \Rightarrow

▶ To Lock When Handset Closed After Closed \Rightarrow \Rightarrow ON \Rightarrow

▶ To Lock After Handset Closed a Certain Time
Timer \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select time until lock activates \Rightarrow

▶ To Lock by Pressing Lock Key \Rightarrow \Rightarrow ON \Rightarrow
In Touch Style, press to lock.

▶ To Require Security Code to Cancel Lock
Security Code \Rightarrow \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow

3

Tip

- All keypad operations are disabled, except for answering incoming calls and turning power on/off.
- appears at bottom of Display when keypad operation is available in Keypad Lock.
- Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when *Keypad Lock* is set.

Temporarily Unlocking Keypad Lock

When Security Code Required

1 Enter Security Code \Rightarrow

■ In Touch Style
 \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Enter Security Code \Rightarrow

When Security Code Not Required

1 Open handset

■ In Touch Style
Drag Scrollbar to the right.



Secure Remote Lock

If your handset is lost, lock handset functions remotely from a PC or other mobile phones. All key operations are disabled except Power Key. For details, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>), or access My SoftBank from your handset:
 ⇒ **メニューリスト (Menu List)** ⇒ ⇒ **My SoftBank** ⇒

IC Card Authentication

Hold a FeliCa compatible contactless IC card over handset to authenticate the user ID without canceling Dial Lock or Keypad Lock, or without entering a code number.

- IC Card Authentication is available even when IC Card Lock is activated.
- Register up to two contactless IC cards.

Activating IC Card Authentication

- 1** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒ **IC Card Authentic.** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter Security Code** ⇒



IC Card Authentication Window

- 2** **ON** ⇒ ⇒ **OK** ⇒

■ To Activate Registered IC Card

- ⇒ **ON** ⇒

- 3** Place IC Card over logo
 disappears after card is registered.

Tip

- To deactivate Authentication:
 [IC Card Authentication] window ⇒ **OFF** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒
 Select **YES** to delete or **NO** not to delete all registered IC Card data.

Registering IC Card

- 1** **[IC Card Authentication] window** ⇒ ⇒ **New Ext. IC Card** ⇒
- 2** Place IC Card over logo
 disappears after card is registered.

Tip

- To delete IC card registration:
 [IC Card Authentication] window ⇒ ⇒ **Del. Ext. IC Card** ⇒ ⇒ Select IC Card to delete ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒



Rejecting Calls without Caller ID

Incoming calls from hidden and/or unidentified numbers can be rejected.

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒
- 3 **Unknown, Payphone or User Unset** ⇒
- 4 **Reject** ⇒

Tip

- To allow incoming calls, after Step 3: **Accept** ⇒ ⇒ **Select Ring Tone** or **Select Calling Disp.** ⇒ ⇒ **Select type** ⇒ (⇒ **Select a folder** ⇒) ⇒ **Select a ringtone or image** ⇒

Rejecting Calls from Unsaved Numbers

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒

3 **Reject** ⇒

Note

- This procedure is unavailable when **Set Mute Seconds** under **Ring Time (sec.)** is set to **ON** (P. 4-6).

Tip

- To allow incoming calls, after Step 2: **Accept** ⇒

Delaying Ringtone

Delay ringtone, for callers not saved in Phone Book (including Secret Phone Book). In addition, set **Missed Calls Display** to **Not Display** so missed calls with a short ring time do not appear in Received Calls. This can prevent you from accidentally returning calls from nuisance calls.

- This procedure is unavailable when **Reject Unknown** is set to **Reject**.

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Incoming Call** ⇒ ⇒ **Ring Time (sec.)** ⇒

- 2 **Set Mute Seconds** ⇒ ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ⇒ Enter time before ringtone plays

3 **Missed Calls Display** ⇒ ⇒ **Display or Not Display** ⇒

Tip

- For calls from numbers in Secret Phone Book, only the number appears when **Set Mute Seconds** is set to **OFF**.
- Ringing starts in zero seconds when **Set Mute Seconds** is **OFF**.

Emission OFF Mode

The following are prohibited in Emission OFF Mode:

- Incoming/Outgoing Calls
- Incoming/Outgoing Messages
- Yahoo! Keitai Access
- PC Site Browser Access

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒ **Emission OFF Mode** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Repeat procedure to cancel Emission OFF Mode.

Tip

- Emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) are available even in Emission OFF Mode.



Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

Activate Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode to view secret Phone Book entries, secret Schedule events and secret files.

Secret Mode: View all data and secret data.

Secret Data Only Mode: For Phone Book and Schedule, only secret entries appear. For image files, messages and bookmarks, all saved data appear.

Activating Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒ **Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode** ⇒

2 Enter Security Code ⇒

Canceling Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

1 In Standby,

Hiding Handset Data

Files stored in Secret Folders are accessible only when Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode is activated.

- Storable file types: Images, videos, received and sent messages and bookmarks (Yahoo! Keitai and PC Browser).
- Data saved on memory card or USIM Card cannot be stored in Secret Folders.
- Each Secret Folder of Data Folder has a fixed storage capacity as follows:
 - My Picture: Approx. 4 MB
 - Videos: Approx. 10 MB

Moving Data to Secret Folders

1 Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode

2 From a folder, select an item ⇒ ⇒ **Keep in Secret** ⇒

Moving Data from Secret Folders

1 Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode

2 In a folder list ⇒ **Secret** ⇒

3 Select an item ⇒ ⇒ **Put Out** ⇒

4 Select a destination folder ⇒

Tip

- Functions available with Secret Folder data are limited.

Mail



Overview	5-2
Sending Messages	5-3
Sending S! Mail	5-3
Sending SMS Messages	5-5
Receiving & Opening Messages	5-6
Opening New Messages.....	5-6
Opening Inbox Messages.....	5-6
Replying to Messages.....	5-7
Using Mail List	5-7
Handling Messages	5-9
Message Folders	5-9
Opening Sent & Received Messages	5-9
Sorting Messages.....	5-11
Using Tomomato-Mail	5-11
Prohibiting Access to Messages.....	5-12
Saving S! Mail Attachments.....	5-13
Advanced Features	5-15
Sending Messages	5-15
Receiving/Opening Messages	5-18
Managing/Using Messages	5-19

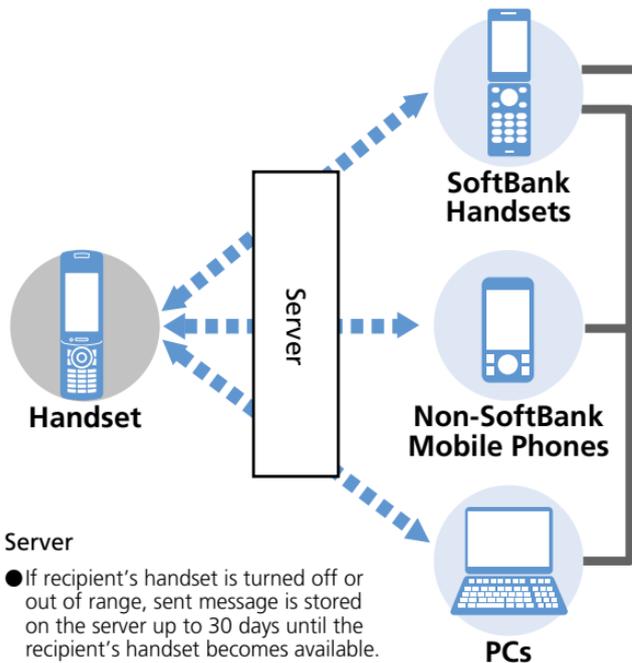
5



Overview

Handset supports SMS and S! Mail.

5
Mail



Server

- If recipient's handset is turned off or out of range, sent message is stored on the server up to 30 days until the recipient's handset becomes available.

Available Mail Services

SMS

Exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets.

S! Mail (Separate contract required)

Exchange long text messages with S! Mail compatible SoftBank handsets and other e-mail compatible mobile phones and PCs. Images and melodies can also be attached to S! Mail.

Customize Handset E-mail Address.
Effective for blocking spam.

Graphic Mail

Use HTML mail to change font size/color, background, etc.

Emotion-Expressing Mail

Based on sender's message, handset shows a pictogram matching the sender's mood.



Sending S! Mail

1 Press and hold



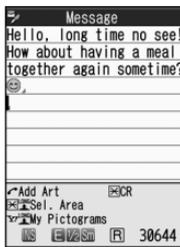
Composition Window

2 Select address field \Rightarrow \Rightarrow **Enter Address** \Rightarrow \Rightarrow **Enter address** \Rightarrow

To add more recipients, Select address field, press and repeat the same step. After adding recipients, press .

3 Select Subject field \Rightarrow \Rightarrow **Enter subject** \Rightarrow

4 Select text field \Rightarrow \Rightarrow **Enter text** \Rightarrow



Text Entry Window

5

■ To Cancel Transmission

\Rightarrow When **Start Packet Connection** appears \Rightarrow
Alternatively, press during transmission.

■ If **Resend mail?** Appears

\Rightarrow **YES** \Rightarrow

Tip

- Add up to 20 recipients total between To, Cc and Bcc fields.

Attaching Files

Attach the following files to S! Mail:

- Images
- Melodies
- Documents
- Books
- Phone Book entries
- Schedule (To Do List)
- Videos
- PDF files
- Music (Songs)
- Widgets
- Account Details
- Bookmarks

- For information about image, video, melody, PDF, other document, music files, book and widgets, see P. 12-2.

1 [Composition] window \Rightarrow \Rightarrow **Attach File** \Rightarrow

2 Select a file type \Rightarrow (\Rightarrow **Enter Security Code** \Rightarrow) \Rightarrow **Select a file** \Rightarrow

■ Images with Large File Size

\Rightarrow **Attach Mail, QVGA Scale down** or **VGA Scale down** \Rightarrow (\Rightarrow Check an image \Rightarrow)

Note

- Copy protected files cannot be sent as attachments or output to external devices.

Tip

- To open or play an attached file:
Select the file \Rightarrow



Sending Messages

Graphic Mail

Create html messages to change font color/size and background color. Add scrolling text, paste images, etc.

<Example> Change font size, background color, insert an image and set flashing text.

5
Mail

- [Text Entry] window** → → → Select a font size → Enter text
- Select a background color → Press while selecting to toggle between 25-color and 256-color palettes.
- Select a folder → Select an image → **Inserting Images with Large File Size** → Insert Mail or SubQCIF Scale down → Check an image
- Enter text → → Enter text → → End
-

Saving Addresses to Blog/Mail Member List

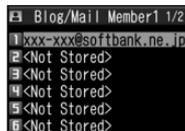
Group address into a list to send messages by group. One can be set for uploading blog images.

- 1** → Own Data → Blog/Mail Member



Blog/Mail Member List

- 2** Select a Blog/Mail Member list



Blog/Mail Member Window

- 3** **<Not Stored>** → To Enter an Address → Enter address

- ▶ To Save an Address From Phone Book or Sent/Received Address List → Look-up address → Phone Book, Sent Address or Received Address → Select an address

Setting Blog Upload Address

Save one blog address to Blog/Mail Member to set a blog address for posting entries.

- 1** **[Blog/Mail Member List]** → Blog/Mail Member ★ specified as upload destination appears.

Tip

- To cancel blog upload destination: Select Blog/Mail Member with ★



Sending Messages

Sending SMS Messages

Send short text messages to SoftBank handsets, using recipient's phone number.

1 ⇒ **Compose SMS** ⇒



SMS Composition Window

2 ⇒ ⇒ **Enter Address** ⇒
⇒ **Enter phone number** ⇒

3 ⇒ ⇒ **Enter text** ⇒

4

More Features

Advanced

Composing Messages

- Enter Address from Phone Book
- Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List
- Enter Address from Blog/Mail Member List
- Set To, Cc or Bcc
- Delete an Address
- Insert Header/Signature

- Enter My Pictograms
- Delete Text
- Change SMS Message to S! Mail

▶ P. 5-15

Sending Messages

- Set Priority (S! Mail)
- Server Storage Period (SMS)
- Check Delivery
- Save Messages to Draft
- Quit Composing and Delete Message

▶ P. 5-15

Attaching Files

- Capture and Attach Still Image/Video
- Delete Files Attached to S! Mail

▶ P. 5-16

Blog/Mail Member

- Edit an Address
- Delete Addresses from a Blog/Mail Member List
- Edit a Blog/Mail Member List Name
- Reset a Blog/Mail Member List Name

▶ P. 5-16

Graphic Mail

- Add/Edit Text Decoration
- Undo
- Preview Graphic Mail
- Cancel All Decoration
- Create Graphic Mail Automatically
- Save Graphic Mail as a Template
- Download Templates
- Create Graphic Mail from a Template

- Edit a Template
- Edit Title of a Template
- Delete Templates

▶ P. 5-17

Customize

Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Message Image

▶ P. 14-4

S! Mail Settings

- Edit Header/Signature
- Insert Header/Signature Automatically
- Request Delivery Report

▶ P. 14-15

SMS Settings

- Request Delivery Report
- Set Server Storage Period of SMS Messages
- Set SMS Input Language

▶ P. 14-15



Receiving & Opening Messages

Opening New Messages

Received Result window opens for new messages.

Emotion-Expressing Mail

When an S! Mail is received, a pictogram matching the message content appears in Received Result Window and Message List. Set the Keyword setting on, to show Keyword indicators when messages include user-set keywords (P. 14-15).

● Pictograms

	Hurry		Advice
	Like		Cheer
	Dislike		Join
	Happy		Impression
	Angry		Request
	Sad		Notice
	Fun		OK
	Surprise		Reply
	Question		Other

1 [Received Result] window ⇨ **Mail** ⇨ ●

2 Select a message ⇨ ●

Note

- By default, complete S! Mail messages (including attachments) are automatically retrieved. Transmission fees apply, depending on your subscription plan. While traveling abroad, message retrieval may incur high transmission fees.

Tip

- Alternatively open new messages from desktop notification.
- Indicator may not always correspond to message content.
- appears if message content does not match any of the above moods or information.

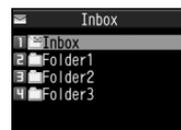
In Touch Style

1 [Received Result] window ⇨ Tap **Mail**

2 Tap a message

Opening Inbox Messages

1 ⇨ **Inbox** ⇨ ●



Folder List



Receiving & Opening Messages

2 Select a folder ⇨ ●



Message List

3 Select a message ⇨ ●



Message Window

To check previous/next message, press

Tip

- Some attachments may require content keys to open/play the file.

In Touch Style

1

2 **Mail** ⇨ **Inbox**

3 Tap a folder

4 Tap a message

Use or to toggle previous/next messages.

Alternatively, swipe left or right to toggle.

Replying to Messages

1 [Inbox Message List] ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ● ⇨

■ When Original Message Has Multiple Recipients

⇨ *To Sender* or *To All* ⇨ ●

2 Edit subject/text ⇨

Replying (Quote Message)

1 [Inbox Message List] ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ● ⇨

■ When Original Message Has Multiple Recipients

⇨ *To Sender* or *To All* ⇨ ●

2 Edit subject/text ⇨

Note

- If *To All* is selected, your address is also included in the reply.

Tip

- Attachments are automatically deleted from reply messages.
- Quoting text is only available for S! Mail replies.

Using Mail List

Retrieve Mail List and select messages to download or forward.

1 ⇨ **Server Mail** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Mail List** ⇨ ● (⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●)



Mail List



Receiving & Opening Messages

2 Select a message ⇨ ⇨

Message Receive ⇨

▶ **To Receive a Message**

Receive This ⇨

▶ **To Receive Multiple Messages**

Receive Selected ⇨ ⇨ Select messages ⇨

▶ **To Receive All Messages**

Receive All ⇨

More Features

Advanced

Receiving Messages

- Manually Retrieve Messages

▶ P. 5-18)

Checking Messages

- Retrieve Complete S! Mail Manually
- Delete S! Mail from Server
- Read Out Messages
- Check Message Information

▶ P. 5-18)

Server Message Operations

- Update Mail List
- Switch Mail List Views
- Check Server Message Information
- Forward a Server Message
- Delete Server Messages
- Check Server Memory Status

▶ P. 5-18)

Customize

Display Settings

- Set Image or Video for Incoming Message
- Set Image for New Message/Received Result Window
- Show New Message Info While Viewing TV

▶ P. 14-4)

Incoming Message Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones
- Set Ringtone Duration for Incoming Message
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set Illumination Pattern
- Adjust Illumination Color
- Set Illumination to Flash for New Messages
- Set an Incoming Message Image

▶ P. 14-7)

Incoming Message Settings

- Customize E-mail Address
- Do Not Show Emotion Indicators
- Show Keyword Indicators
- Delete Keywords
- Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation
- Set Whether to Read Out Received Messages
- Set Voice to Read Out Messages
- Set Manual Receive

▶ P. 14-15)

Reply Settings

- Quote Message Marks

▶ P. 14-16)

5

Mail

Tip

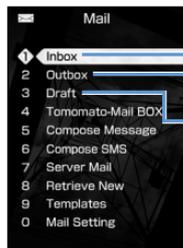
- If download fails while retrieving all messages, download is canceled.
- When there is only one message, message opens upon retrieval.



Message Folders

Press to open Mail Menu.

Sent, received and draft messages are saved in the locations below.



Message Menu

Received messages

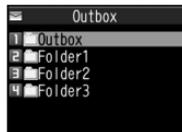
Sent messages

Draft messages

Opening Sent & Received Messages

<Example> Open a Sent Message

1 → **Outbox** →



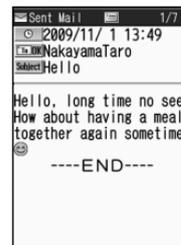
Folder List

2 Select a folder →



Message List

3 Select a message →



Message Window

To check previous/next message, press .

Tip

- When Outbox/Inbox is full, the oldest message is deleted for each message sent/received. Unread and protected messages and Secret Folder messages are not deleted.

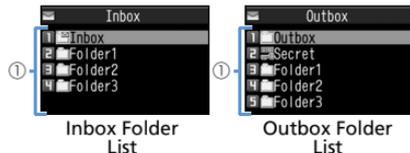


Handling Messages

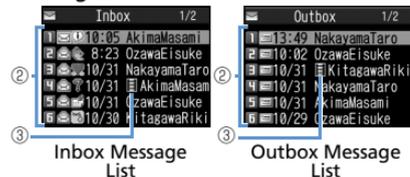
Windows & Indicators

Check message status, attachment type, etc. by indicators.

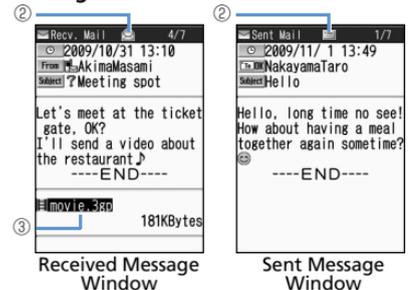
Folder Lists



Message Lists



Message Windows



①	Folder Type General Folder Secret Folder
②	Message Status Unread Read Protected (Unread) Protected (Read) Forwarded Replied Sent to a Single Recipient Sent to Multiple Recipients
③	Message Type SMS on Handset SMS on USIM Card S! Mail Notification Attachment Type Image Video Melody (Tones/Ringtones) Music Copy-protected File Phone Book Entry, Schedule Event or Bookmark Widget Book PDF Document Forwarded Server Mail Others Multiple Files

The following marks appear on indicators to inform you:

- Folder Contains Unread Messages
- Locked Folder
- Folder with Auto Sort Set
- Protected Message
- Delivery failed to Some Recipients or Some Attachments Deleted
- Delivery Failed/All Attachments Deleted
- Attachment Deleted
- High Priority Message

Tip

- To open/play copy-protected files, save files to Data Folder.
- appears in **Subject** field when Delivery Report is received.



Sorting Messages

Automatically sort incoming/outgoing messages into folders.

1 [Folder List] → Select a folder →

→ **Auto-sort** → ●▶

▶ To Sort by Address

Address Sort → ● → **Look-up Address, Look-up Group, Look-up Member** or **Enter Address** → ●

▶ To Sort by Subject

Subject Sort → ● → Enter subject → ●

▶ To Sort by Reply Failed, Send Failed or Unregistered Address

Reply Impossible, Sent Impossible or **Unregistered Add.** → ●

Tip

- Only one Inbox folder can be specified for sorting *Reply impossible* messages.
- Only one Outbox folder can be specified for sorting *Send impossible* messages.
- Search addresses from Phone Book, Received Address List or Sent Address List in *Look-up address*.

Canceling Auto Sort

1 [Folder List] → Select a folder →

→ **Auto-sort** → ●

2 Select a criterion → → **Release**

→ ●▶

▶ To Cancel a Criteria

Release This → ● → **YES** → ●

▶ To Cancel Multiple Criteria

Release Selected → ● → Select criteria → ● → → **YES** → ●

▶ To Cancel All Criteria

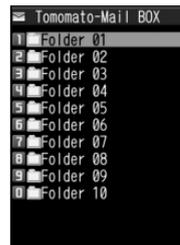
Release All → ● → **YES** → ●

Using Tomomato-Mail

Store e-mail addresses in Tomomato-Mail and check messages with stored addresses by selecting Tomomato-Mail BOX.

Checking Tomomato-Mail

1 → **Tomomato-Mail BOX** → ●



Tomomato-Mail Folder List

2 Select a folder → ●



Storing Tomomato-Mail

- [Tomomato-Mail Folder List] →
Select a folder → ▶
▶ To Enter an Address
Enter Address → ● → Enter Address
→ ●
▶ To Store E-Mail Address From Phone
Book or Sent/Received Address List
Phonebook, Sent Address or
Received Address → ● → Select an
address → ●

Canceling Tomomato-Mail

- [Tomomato-Mail Folder List] →
Select a folder → →
Unregister → ● → YES → ●

Prohibiting Access to Messages

Setting Mail Box Lock

- Mail Setting → ● → Mail
Box Lock → ● → Enter Security
Code → ●
- Select a mail box → ●
Repeat Step 2 to specify other boxes.
-

Setting Folder Lock

- [Folder List] → Select a folder →
 → Folder Lock → ● → Enter
Security Code → ● → YES → ●
Locked folders are indicated by .

Tip

- Repeat the same procedure to cancel mail box and folder lock.
- Security Code entry is required to view messages in locked mail boxes and folders.

Storing Messages in Secret Folders

- Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode beforehand (P. 4-7).
- Unread Messages, S! Mail with Text Unreceived or delivery reports cannot be stored in Secret Folders.

- [Message List] → Select a message
→ → Keep in Secret → ● ▶
▶ To Store a Message
Keep This → ●
▶ To Store Multiple Messages
Keep Selected → ● → Select a
message → ● (repeat to select
another message) → → YES → ●
▶ To Store All Messages in a Folder
Keep All → ● → YES → ●

Returning Messages in Secret Folders to Ordinary Messages

- [Folder List] → Secret → ●
- Select a message → → Put Out
→ ● ▶
▶ To Return a Message
Put Out This → ● → Select a folder
→ ●



Handling Messages

- ▶ **To Return Multiple Messages**
Put Out Selected → ● → Select a folder → ● → Select a message → ● (repeat to select another message) → ☒ → **YES** → ●
- ▶ **To Return All Messages**
Put Out All → ● → Select a folder → ● → **YES** → ●

Saving S! Mail Attachments

Saving Image, Video, Melody, Music, Flash®, Book and PDF Files

<Example> Save an image

- 1 [Message] window → Select a file → ☒ → **Save Data** → ● → **YES** → ●
- 2 Select a folder → ●
- 3 **YES** or **NO** → ● (→ Select an item → ● (→ Select a view → ● → Check an image → ●))

Saving an Image Inserted in Text

- 1 [Message] window → ☒ → **Save Insert Image** → ●

- 2 Select an image → ● → **YES** → ● → Select a folder → ●
- 3 **YES** or **NO** → ● (→ Select an item → ● (→ Select a view → ● → Check an image → ●))

Saving a Phone Book Entry

- 1 [Message] window → Select contact information (a phone number, etc.) → ● (twice) → **Phone** or **USIM** → ● → **New** → ●
- 2 Edit each item → ☒

Saving a Schedule Event

- 1 [Message] window → Select Schedule events → ● (twice)

Saving a Bookmark

- 1 [Message] window → Select a link (URL, etc.) → ● (twice) → Select a destination → ● → Select a folder → ●

Note

- Mail-attached phone book entries, schedule events or bookmarks cannot be saved to *microSD*.



More Features

Advanced

Managing Messages

- Protect a Message
- Move Messages to a Different Folder
- Delete Messages
- Delete All Read Messages
- Delete All Delivery Reports
- Delete Attached Files
- Copy SMS Messages between Handset and USIM Card
- Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card
- Change Message Color
- Add a Folder
- Edit a Folder Name
- Change Order of Folders
- Delete a Folder
- Check Number of Saved Messages
- Check Sent/Received Addresses
- Delete All Messages in Tomomato-Mail Folder [▶ P. 5-19](#)

Using Messages

- Edit a Sent Message
- Edit & Send a Draft Message
- Forward a Message
- Save Sender, Recipient's E-mail Address or Phone Number to Phone Book
- Call a Phone Number in Text
- Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text
- Access the Internet from a URL in Text

- Save Number/Address in Text to Phone Book or Blog/Mail Member List
- Search Information by Keyword
- Switch Subject Field Views
- Change Message Font Size
- Search for Messages in a Folder
- Sort Messages
- Filter Messages
- Return Message List View to Default
- Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages
- Open S! Mail Delivery Report
- Check Attachment Properties (Image File)

[▶ P. 5-21](#)

Customize

Message Window/Messaging Settings

- Set Message List View
- Set Auto-Play for Melody Attachments
- Set Scroll Unit
- Set Font Size
- Check Mail Settings
- Restore to Default Settings

[▶ P. 14-16](#)

SMS Server Settings

- Change SMS Center Address
- Reset to SoftBank SMS Center Address

[▶ P. 14-17](#)



Sending Messages

Start Here

- [Composition] window P. 5-3
- [Text Entry] window P. 5-3
- [Blog/Mail Member List] P. 5-4
- [Blog/Mail Member] window P. 5-4
- [SMS Composition] window P. 5-5

Composing Messages

Enter Address from Phone Book

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window → **To** → ● → **Phonebook** → ● → Search Phone Book → Select Phone Book → ● → Select an e-mail address or phone number → ●

Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window → **To** → ● → **Sent Address** or **Received Address** → ● → Select an e-mail address/phone number → ● (twice)
 Alternatively, select **To** and press to open Sent/Received Address List.

Enter Address from Blog/Mail Member List

[Composition] window → **To** → ● → **Blog/Mail Member** → ● → Select a Blog/Mail Member list → ●
 All addresses in the selected Blog/Mail Member list are entered in the Address field.
 You must save addresses to a Blog/Mail Member list in advance.

Set To, Cc or Bcc

[Composition] window → **To** → ● → ● → Select an address → → **Change Rcv. Type** → ● → **To, Cc or Bcc** → ●
 Cc (Carbon copy): S! Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Cc field are revealed to the other recipients.
 Bcc (Blind carbon copy): S! Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Bcc field are hidden to the other recipients.
 When there is no address in the To field, the message cannot be sent.

Delete an Address

[Composition] window → **To** → ● → ● → Select an address → → **Delete Receiver** → ● → **YES** → ●

Insert Header/Signature

[Composition] window → → **Add Header** or **Add Signature** → ●
 Save header/signature in advance.

Enter My Pictograms

[Text Entry] window → Press and hold → Select a pictogram → ● → .
 Toggle categories by pressing or .
 Available only in S! Mail.

Delete Text

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window → → **Erase Message** → ● → **YES** → ●

Change SMS Message to S! Mail

[SMS Composition] window → → **S! Mail Conversion** → ●

Sending Messages

Set Priority (S! Mail)

[Composition] window → → **Priority** → ● → **High, Normal** or **Low** → ●



Server Storage Period (SMS)

[SMS Composition] window → [⌂] → **SMS Valid. Per.** → ● → Select a period → ●

☞ Specify a period the SMS message is stored in the server in case it fails to reach the recipient because the recipient's handset is out of range, etc.

☞ When **None** is set, the SMS message is deleted from the server after it is resent once in a certain period of time.

Request Delivery Report

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window → [⌂] → **Delivery Report** or **SMS Report Req.** → ● → **ON** or **OFF** → ●

☞ When **ON** is set, handset receives a delivery report.

Save Messages to Draft

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window → [⌂] → **Save** → ● → **YES** → ●

☞ The message is saved to Draft. Messages saved in Draft can be edited and sent at a later time.

Quit Composing and Delete Message

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window → [⌂] → **Delete** → ● → **YES** → ●

Attaching Files

Capture and Attach Still Image/Video

[Composition] window → [⌂] → **Activate Camera** → ● → **Photo Mode** or **Movie Mode** → ● → Shoot image/video → ●

Delete Files Attached to S! Mail

[Composition] window → Select an attached file → [⌂] → **Delete Att. File** or **Del All Att.Files** → ● → **YES** → ●

Blog/Mail Member

Edit an Address

[Blog/Mail Member] window → Select an address → [⌂] → Edit address → ●

Delete Addresses from a Blog/Mail Member List

[Blog/Mail Member] window → Select an address → [⌂]

- To Select **Delete this** → **Delete this** → ● → **YES** → ●
- To Select **Delete all** → **Delete all** → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → **YES** → ●

Edit a Blog/Mail Member List Name

[Blog/Mail Member List] → Select a Blog/Mail Member list → [⌂] → **Edit Member Name** → ● → Edit name → ●

Reset a Blog/Mail Member List Name

[Blog/Mail Member List] → Select a Blog/Mail Member list → [⌂] → **Reset Member Name** → ● → **YES** → ●



Advanced Features

Graphic Mail

Add/Edit Text Decoration

[Text Entry] window → → → ●
 → Select beginning of characters → ● →
 Select end of characters → ● → Select
 effects menu → ● → Apply or Change
 effects
 Select , press , select YES and then
 press ● to select the entire text.

Undo

[Text Entry] window → → → ●

Preview Graphic Mail

[Text Entry] window → → → ●
 → or to close preview

Cancel All Decoration

[Text Entry] window → → → ●
 → YES → ● (→ ●)

Create Graphic Mail Automatically

[Text Entry] window → Enter text →
 → → ● → to toggle effects →
 ●
 Emotion of the message is detected from the
 entered text, and a set of effects that
 matches the emotion is automatically
 applied.
 Press to toggle insert and no insert for
 pictographs and emoticons.

Save Graphic Mail as a Template

[Text Entry] window → Enter text → ● →
 → **Template** → ● → **Save Template** →
 ● → YES → ●
 Attached files except images inserted in text
 are not included in a template.
 Save up to 1,000 templates including
 downloads. Delete saved templates as
 needed.

Download Templates

→ **Templates** → ● → **Download
 Templates** → ● → YES → ● → Follow
 onscreen instructions

Create Graphic Mail from a Template

→ **Templates** → ● → Select a
 template → ● →

Edit a Template

→ **Templates** → ● → Select a
 template → ● → → **Edit** → ● → Edit
 text → ● (twice) → YES or NO → ●

Edit Title of a Template

→ **Templates** → ● → Select a
 template → → **Edit Title** → ● → Edit
 title → ●

Delete Templates

→ **Templates** → ● → Select a
 template → → **Delete** → ●
 ● To Select **Delete This**
 → **Delete This** → ● → YES → ●
 ● To Select **Delete Selected**
 → **Delete Selected** → ● → Select
 templates → ● → → YES → ●
 ● To Select **Delete All**
 → **Delete All** → ● → Enter Security Code
 → ● → YES → ●



Receiving/Opening Messages

Start Here

- [Message List] P. 5-7
- [Message] window P. 5-7
- [Mail List] P. 5-7

Receiving Messages

Manually Retrieve Messages

→ **Retrieve New** → ● → Received
 Result window opens → **Mail** → ● →
 Select a message → ●

- Press or press and hold to cancel message retrieval.
- Retrieve messages that were stored on the server while handset was off or out of range.
- In Touch Style, manually retrieve messages by:
 77- → **Mail** → **Retrieve New**

Checking Messages

Retrieve Complete S! Mail Manually

[Message List] → Select an S! Mail notification → ● →
 S! Mail notification is deleted when you retrieve the complete message.
 Manually retrieve complete messages when *Message Download* is set to *Manual* (S! Mail Settings, P. 14-16).

Delete S! Mail from Server

[Message List] → Select an S! Mail notification → ● → → **Delete** → ●
 → **Notification, Server Mail or Notifi./Server** → ● → **YES** → ●

Read Out Messages

[Message] window → → **Read Out Message** → ●
 Press ● to stop reading.
 Press to end reading.

Check Message Information

[Message List] → → **Mail Info** → ●

Server Message Operations

Update Mail List

[Mail List] → → **Mail List** → ●

Switch Mail List Views

[Mail List] → → **List Setting** → ● →
Subject, Name or Address → ●

Check Server Message Information

[Mail List] → Select a message → →
Mail Info → ●

Forward a Server Message

[Mail List] → Select a message → →
Forward → ● → **To** → ● → Enter address →



Delete Server Messages

[Mail List] ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ⇨

Delete ⇨ ●

- To Select *Delete This*

⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ● ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

- To Select *Delete Selected*

⇨ *Delete Selected* ⇨ ● ⇨ Select messages ⇨ ● ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

- To Select *Delete All*

⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

Check Server Memory Status

⇨ **Server Mail** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Server Mail Memory** ⇨ ●

Managing/Using Messages

Start Here

[Folder List] P. 5-9

[Message List] P. 5-9

[Message] window P. 5-9

[Inbox Folder List] P. 5-10

[Inbox Message List] P. 5-10

[Received Message] window P. 5-10

[Sent Message] window P. 5-10

[Tomomato-Mail Folder List] P. 5-11

Managing Messages

Protect a Message

[Message] window ⇨ ⇨ **Protect**

ON/OFF ⇨ ●

If a message is protected, this procedure cancels protection.

Move Messages to a Different Folder

[Message List] ⇨ Select a message ⇨

⇨ **Move** ⇨ ●

- To Select *Move This*

⇨ *Move This* ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ● ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

- To Select *Move Selected*

⇨ *Move Selected* ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ● ⇨ Select messages ⇨ ● ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

- To Select *Move All*

⇨ *Move All* ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ● ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

A message can also be moved to a different folder from Message window.



Advanced Features

Delete Messages

[Folder List] → → **Delete All** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →
 [Message List] → Select a message → → **Delete** →

- To Select *Delete This*
→ **Delete This** → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete Selected*
→ **Delete Selected** → → Select messages → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete All*
→ **Delete All** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Delete All Read Messages

[Inbox Folder List] → → **Delete Read** → → **YES** →

[Inbox Message List] → → **Delete** → → **Delete Read** → → **YES** →

Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Delete All Delivery Reports

[Inbox Message List] → → **Delete** → → **Delete All Reports** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

Protected delivery reports cannot be deleted.

Delete Attached Files

[Message] window → Select attached files → → **Delete Att. File** or **Del All Att. Files** → → **YES** →

Copy SMS Messages between Handset and USIM Card

→ **Tools** → → **USIM Operation** → → Enter Security Code → → **Copy** → → **Phone** → **USIM** or **USIM** → **Phone** → → **SMS** → → **Inbox** or **Outbox** → → Select a folder → → Select an SMS message → → **YES** →

Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card

→ **Tools** → → **USIM Operation** → → Enter Security Code → → **Delete** → → **USIM** → → **SMS** → → **Inbox** or **Outbox** → → Select a folder → → Select an SMS message → → → **YES** →

Change Message Color

[Message List] → Select a message → Press and hold

Each time you press and hold , the message color toggles as follows: Red → Blue → Default (Black)

Add a Folder

[Folder List] → → **Add Folder** → → Enter folder name → → **YES** or **NO** → (→ **Address Sort, Subject Sort, Reply Impossible, Send Impossible** or **Unregistered Add.** → → Make auto Sort settings → → **YES** or **NO** →

Edit a Folder Name

[Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Edit Folder Name** → → Edit folder name →

Preinstalled folders cannot be renamed.

Change Order of Folders

[Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Sort Folder** → → Select a position →
 The order of preinstalled folders cannot be changed.



Advanced Features

Delete a Folder

[Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Delete Folder** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

Folders containing protected messages and preinstalled folders cannot be deleted.

This procedure also deletes messages stored in the folder.

Auto Sort settings are also canceled when you delete a folder with Auto Sort settings.

Check Number of Saved Messages

[Folder List] / [Message List] → → **No. of Messages** →

Check number of total, unread, protected and USIM Card messages.

Folder List: The total of all folders.

Message List: The total of the selected folder.

Check Sent/Received Addresses

Press and hold or press and hold → Select an entry →

Delete All Messages in Tomomato-Mail Folder

[Tomomato-Mail Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Del All in Folder** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

Using Messages

Edit a Sent Message

[Sent Message] window → → Edit address, subject and text →

Edit & Send a Draft Message

→ **Draft** → → Select a message → → Edit address, subject and text →

Forward a Message

[Received Message] window → → **Reply/Forward** → → **Forward** → (twice) → Enter address →

The subject and text can also be edited.

Files attached to/inserted in S! Mails are also forwarded.

Save Sender, Recipient's E-mail Address or Phone Number to Phone Book

[Message] window → → **Address List** → → Select an e-mail address/phone number → → **Save Address** → → **YES** →

● To Save to Handset

→ **Phone** → → Select store method → (→ Search Phone Book → Select Phone Book → (twice)) → Edit items → (→ **YES** or **NO** → (→ Enter entry number →))

● To Save to USIM Card

→ **USIM** → → Select store method → (→ Search Phone Book → Select Phone Book → (twice)) → Edit items → (→ **Overwrite** or **Add** → (→ **YES** or **NO** →))

Call a Phone Number in Text

[Message] window → Select a phone number → → **Voice Phone** or **Video Call** → → **Dial** →

Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text

[Message] window → Select an e-mail address → → Compose S! Mail →



Access the Internet from a URL in Text

[Message] window → Select a URL → ●
→ **Yahoo! Keitai** or **PC Site Browser** → ●
(→ YES or NO → ●)

Save Number/Address in Text to Phone Book or Blog/Mail Member List

[Message] window → Select an e-mail address/phone number → [F] →
Save Address → ● → **Phonebook** or
Blog/Mail Member → ●

- To Save to Handset
→ **Phone** → ● → Select store method →
● (→ Search Phone Book → Select Phone
Book → ● (twice)) → Edit items → [E] (→
YES or NO → ●) (→ Enter entry number →
●)
- To Save to USIM Card
→ **USIM** → ● → Select store method →
● (→ Search Phone Book → Select Phone
Book → ● (twice)) → Edit items → [E] (→
Overwrite or Add → ●) (→ YES or NO →
●)
- To Save to Blog/Mail Member List
→ Select a Blog/Mail Member list → ● →
Select an item → ● (→ YES → ●)

Search Information by Keyword

[Message] window → [F] → **Quick Search**
→ ● → **Enter keyword** → ● → Enter
keyword → ● → [Y] or [B]rowser →
● → Select an item from search results →
●

Switch Subject Field Views

[Message List] → Press and hold [#]
[H] When *Mail List Disp.* is set to **2 Lines**, view
toggles in the order Name → Address.
[H] When *Mail List Disp.* is set to **1 Line**, or to **1
Line+Body**, the view cycles as follows:
Subject → Name → Address

Change Message Font Size

[Message] window → Press and hold [C]

Search for Messages in a Folder

[Message List] → [F] → **Search Mail** → ●
→ **Search Sender**, **Search Receiver** or
Search Subject → ● (→ Select a search
criterion → ●) → Select an address, enter
address or subject → ●
[H] Narrow down search results by repeating the
search operation.
[H] This procedure can be combined with *Sort* or
Filter.

Sort Messages

[Message List] → [F] → **Sort** → ● →
Select a criterion → ●
[H] This procedure can be combined with the
Search Mail or *Filter*.

Filter Messages

[Message List] → [F] → **Filter** → ● →
Select a criterion → ●
[H] This procedure can be combined with *Search
Mail* or *Sort*.

Return Message List View to Default

[Message List] → [F] → **Display All** → ●

Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages

[Inbox Message List] → [F] → **Read All** →
● → YES → ●

Open S! Mail Delivery Report

[Sent Message] window → [F] → **Disp.
Report** → ●
[H] Only available in Message window of a sent
message with a requested delivery report.



Advanced Features

Check Attachment Properties (Image File)

[Message] window →  → *Property* →

→ Select image →

Internet

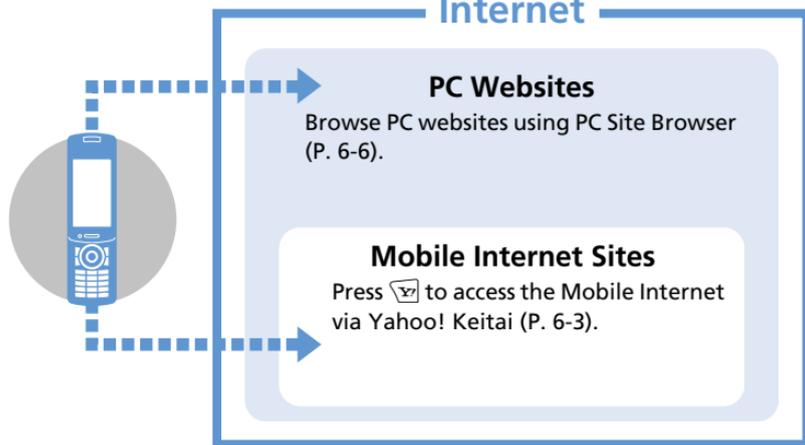


Overview	6-2
Yahoo! Keitai	6-3
Connecting to Yahoo! Keitai	6-3
PC Site Browser	6-6
PC Site Browser	6-6
Connecting to PC Websites	6-6
Page Operations	6-10
Navigating Pages	6-10
Open Linked Page in New Tab	6-10
Jumping to Next or Previous Page	6-11
Selecting Links and Other Items	6-11
Streaming Music and Video	6-11
Bookmarks & Saved Pages	6-13
Using Bookmarks	6-13
Using Saved Pages	6-14
Advanced Features	6-16
Connecting to the Internet	6-16
Page Operations	6-17
Bookmarks & Saved Pages	6-19

6



Internet



6

Internet

Transmission & Information Fees

Some web contents automatically connect to different pages incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply.

About Security

Handset supports SSL/TLS (encryption protocols for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information). Root certificates necessary to use SSL/TLS are saved on handset by default.

- SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) and TLS (Transport Layer Security) protocols encrypt data before transmission. Connect via SSL/TLS to safely transmit personal information, credit card numbers and internal corporate information, and guard against eavesdropping, data manipulation, impersonation and other Internet risks.
- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of SSL/TLS usage. SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd. and Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd. cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL/TLS.

* When **Warning Messages** is set to **ON**, an alert appears each time handset connects to a website using PC Site Browser.



Connecting to Yahoo! Keitai

1



Web Page

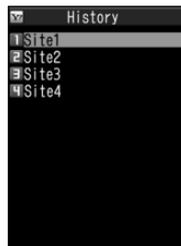
2 Select an item

Repeat to select more links.

3 **YES** to close browser

Using Access History

1 Press and hold **History**



History List

2 Select a record

Entering URLs

1 Press and hold **Enter URL**



URL Entry Window

2 **<NEW>** **Enter URL**

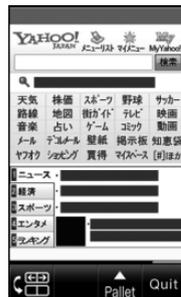
Tip

- A confirmation for SSL/TLS communication appears each time a secure page is opened. appears in SSL/TLS compatible pages.
- Some pages require user authentication. Select text entry field and enter your user ID or password.

In Touch Style

1

2 **Yahoo!** **Yahoo! Keitai**



Web Page (Touch Style)

3 Tap an item

Repeat to select more links.



4 Quit ⇒ YES to close browser

Tip

- Drag up, down, left or right to scroll within the page.

Navigating Yahoo! Keitai

Tap Pallet key to use the following:



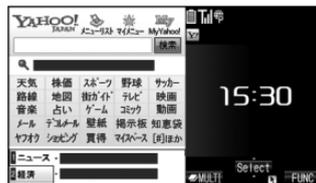
①	Reload page
②	Access Saved Pages List
③	Touchkeys (P. 1-13)
④	To Yahoo! Keitai top
⑤	Access History
⑥	Access Bookmark list

Using Access History

- 1 777-
- 2 **Yahoo! ⇒ History**
- 3 **Tap a record**

In Share Style

- 1



Web Page (Share Style)

Window opens in Split Landscape View.
Clock appears in right window.

- 2 **Select an item** ⇒ ●
Repeat to select more links.
- 3 ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ● **to close browser**

Tip

- Alternatively, access sites from *History* or enter URLs (P. 6-3).

Changing to Share Style

Display changes to Split Landscape View if the style is changed from Communication Style or Touch Style to Share Style while using Yahoo! Keitai.



More Features

Advanced

Yahoo! Keitai

- Switch to PC Site Browser
- Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

(▶ P. 6-16)

History

- Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- Check a URL in History
- Delete Records in History

(▶ P. 6-16)

Using URL Log

- Use Previously Entered URLs
- Edit Previously Entered URLs
- Send URLs by Mail
- Delete URL Records

(▶ P. 6-16)

Root Certificates

- Check Certificate Details
- Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid

(▶ P. 6-17)

Customize

Internet

- Clear Cache
- Delete Cookies
- Initialize Memory Status of Internet
- Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number

- Set Whether to Send Referer
- Enable/Disable Cookies
- Set Whether to Activate Scripts
- Check Internet Settings
- Reset Internet Settings

(▶ P. 14-18)



PC Site Browser

View PC websites using PC Site Browser. Scroll up, down, left or right to view entire page.

- You may not be able to view as you want depending on the site.
- Note that transmission fees may be expensive for pages with large amounts of data.



①	Tabs One for each title/URL appears when viewing several pages.
②	Page Toggle Appears when viewing several pages. Toggle with .
③	Layout Display PC Screen Small Screen
④	New Tab Open link in a new tab.

About Page Layout

When using PC Site Browser, two page layout types are available for each of

PC Screen and Small Screen:

PC Screen: Scroll pages vertically and horizontally.

Small Screen: Scroll pages vertically.

Pages are laid out to fit Display width.

Connecting to PC Websites

- 1 Press and hold ⇒ **PC Site Browser** ⇒



PC Site Browser Menu

- 2 **Home** ⇒ (⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒)
⇒ **Select an item** ⇒
Repeat to select more links.



Web Page

- 3 ⇒ **YES** ⇒ to close browser



Using Access History

- 1 [PC Site Browser Menu] ⇒ **History** ⇒ ●



History List

- 2 Select a record ⇒ ● (⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒ ●)

Entering URLs

- 1 [PC Site Browser Menu] ⇒ **Enter URL** ⇒ ●

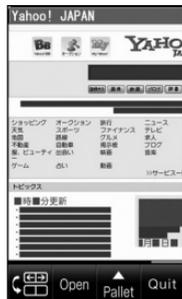


URL Entry Window

- 2 <NEW> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter URL ⇒ ●
⇒ OK ⇒ ● (⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒ ●)

In Touch Style

- 1 77-
- 2 **Yahoo!** ⇒ **PC Site Browser** ⇒ **Home** (⇒ **YES** or **NO**)



Web Page (Touch Style)

- 3 Tap an item
Repeat to select more links.
- 4 **Quit** ⇒ **YES** to close browser

Tip

- Drag up, down, left or right to scroll within the page. Pinch apart or pinch (P. 1-9) to enlarge or reduce view.

Navigating PC Site Browser

Tap Pallet key to use the following:



①	Reload page
②	Touchkeys (P. 1-13)
③	To PC Site Browser Home
④	Access History
⑤	Access Bookmark list

Using Access History

- 1 77-
- 2 **Yahoo!** ⇒ **PC Site Browser** ⇒ **History**
- 3 Tap a record (⇒ **YES** or **NO**)



In Share Style

- 1 Press and hold ⇒ **PC Site Browser** ⇒ ⇒ **Home** ⇒ (⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒)



Window opens in Landscape View.

- 2 Select an item ⇒ Repeat to select more links.
- 3 ⇒ **YES** ⇒ to close browser

Tip

- Alternatively, access sites from *History* or enter URLs (P. 6-7).

Changing to Share Style

When using PC Site Browser in Communication Style or Touch Style, changing to Share Style will switch Display view to Landscape View. In Bookmark List, History, etc., Display switches to Split Landscape View, and a clock appears in the right window.



Tip

- Softkey operations are available in Landscape View. However, Softkey labels do not appear in Display.

More Features

Advanced

PC Site Browser

- Switch Page View
- Return to Home

▶ P. 6-16

History

- Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- Check a URL in History
- Delete Records in History

▶ P. 6-16

Using URL Log

- Use Previously Entered URLs
- Edit Previously Entered URLs
- Send URLs by Mail
- Delete URL Records

▶ P. 6-16

Customize

Internet

- Clear Cache
- Delete Cookies
- Initialize Memory Status of Internet
- Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number
- Set Whether to Send Referer
- Enable/Disable Cookies
- Set Whether to Activate Scripts
- Check Internet Settings



PC Site Browser

- Reset Internet Settings

(▶ P. 14-18)

PC Site Browser

- Do Not Show Alert When Activating PC Site
Browser & Switching Browsers

(▶ P. 14-19)



Navigating Pages

Scrolling Pages

If a page extends beyond view, use to scroll page.

Press or to jump between sections of the page.

Viewing Frames

When a page includes multiple frames, select frames to view.

1 ⇒ Select a frame

2 ⇒ **Frame In** ⇒

Navigate through the frame as you would a page.

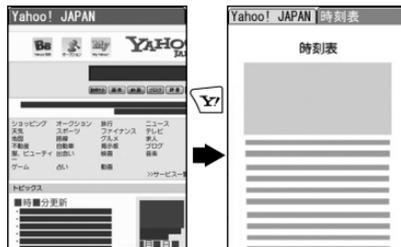
To exit frames, press , select **Frame Out** and then press .

Open Linked Page in New Tab

Open up to five pages simultaneously. Press to toggle pages.

1 [Web Page] ⇒ Select a link ⇒

The linked page appears in a new tab.



New Tab

Press to toggle tabs.

Tip

- To open pages in a new tab other than linked pages:
[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ Window Operation ⇒ ⇒ Open New Window ⇒ ⇒ Bookmark, Enter URL (, Yahoo! Keitai or Home) ⇒ ⇒ Specify page to open ⇒
- To close opened pages:
[New Tab] ⇒ CLEAR ⇒ YES ⇒
- Use CLEAR to return to previous pages stored in cache. Return through pages opened in tabs to close.
- When using Yahoo! Keitai in Share Style, new pages do not open in tabs. Toggle to view hidden pages.

In Touch Style

1 [Web Page (Touch Style)] ⇒

⇒ Tap link

Linked page appears in new tab. Tap tabs to toggle pages.

Tip

- To close a tab:
[New Tab] ⇒ _LOCK ⇒ YES



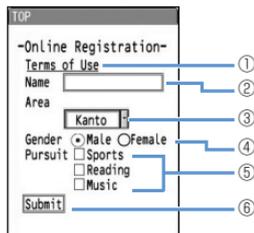
Jumping to Next or Previous Page

Once opened pages are stored in a temporary storage area (cache). Press **[F5]**, select **History Back** or **History Forward** and press **[Enter]** to go back to the previous page or proceed to the next page, without connecting to the network as long as the pages are stored in the cache.

- Network connection is made when the cache is full.

Selecting Links and Other Items

Operate as follows when buttons and menus appear in web pages.



①	Link Select a link and press [Enter] to access the linked page.
②	Text Box Select a text box and press [Enter] to open a text entry window to enter text.
③	Pull-down Menu Select a pull-down menu and press [Enter] to open a list of options. Use [Up/Down Arrow] to select an item and press [Enter] .
④	Radio Button Use [Spacebar] and press [Enter] to select only one item from a range of options. [Enter] indicates the item is selected.
⑤	Checkbox Use [Spacebar] and press [Enter] to select multiple items from a range of options. [Enter] indicates the item is selected.
⑥	Command Button Select a command button and press [Enter] to activate the assigned function.

Streaming Music and Video

Play music and videos appearing on a page as you download (streaming).

- Downloaded data is not stored.
- See P. 9-5 for details on using Music Player.
- Only available when using Yahoo! Keitai.

1 [Web Page] ⇨ Select music or video ⇨ **[Enter] (⇨ **YES** or **NO** ⇨ **[Enter]**)**
Once downloading starts, Music Player activates and play starts.

Note

- Packet transmission fees are incurred during streaming even if you pause play.
- Note that expensive packet transmission fees may be incurred.



More Features

Advanced

Page Operations

- Reload Page
- Save Image/Melody Files
- Save Background Image of a Page
- Send URL Links via S! Mail
- Call a Linked Phone Number
- Send S! Mail to a Linked E-mail Address
- Access URL Link
- Save Numbers/Addresses to Phone Book
- Search Information by Keyword
- Change Page Font Size
- Zoom In/Out
- Jump to Top/End of a Page
- Change Character Code
- Play Flash® from the Beginning
- Check Title, URL or Certificate of a Page
- Show Key Guidance

(▶ P. 6-17)

Customize

Internet

- Set Scroll Unit/Speed
- Set Whether to Show Images or Play Melodies

(▶ P. 14-18)

Yahoo! Keitai

- Set Font Size
- Set Flash® Sound On/Off

(▶ P. 14-18)

PC Site Browser

- Set Page Layout

(▶ P. 14-19)



Using Bookmarks

Save URLs to Bookmark for quick access.

Saving URLs to Bookmark

- 1 [Web Page] ⇨ ⇨ **Bookmark**
⇨ ⇨ **Add Bookmark** ⇨ ⇨
YES ⇨

- 2 Select a folder ⇨

Accessing Pages from Bookmark

- 1 Press and hold ▶
 - ▶ From Yahoo! Keitai **Bookmark** ⇨
 - ▶ From PC Site Browser **PC Site Browser** ⇨ ⇨ **Bookmark** ⇨



Bookmark Folder List

- 2 Select a folder ⇨



Bookmark List

- 3 Select a bookmark ⇨ (⇨ **YES** or **NO** ⇨)

Tip

• To access a bookmarked page from another page:
[Web Page] ⇨ ⇨ **Bookmark** ⇨ ⇨
Bookmark List ⇨ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨
 ⇨ Select a bookmark ⇨

In Touch Style

- 1
- 2 **Yahoo!** ▶
 - ▶ From Yahoo! Keitai **Bookmark**

- ▶ From PC Site Browser **PC Site Browser** ⇨ **Bookmark**

- 3 Tap a folder

- 4 Tap a bookmark ⇨ (**YES** or **NO**)

In Share Style

Saving URLs to Bookmark

- 1 [Web Page (Share Style)] ⇨ ⇨
Bookmark ⇨ ⇨ **Add**
Bookmark ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

- 2 Select a folder ⇨

Accessing Pages from Bookmark

- 1 Press and hold ▶
 - ▶ From Yahoo! Keitai **Bookmark** ⇨
 - ▶ From PC Site Browser **PC Site Browser** ⇨ ⇨ **Bookmark** ⇨



Bookmark Folder List.

- 2 Select a folder → ●
- 3 Select a bookmark → ●
(⇒ YES or NO → ●)

Using Saved Pages

Save a page to Saved Pages to view that page at a later time without incurring connection fees.

- Only Yahoo! Keitai pages can be saved.
- Viewable content is page as it was saved.

Saving a Page

- 1 [Web Page] → [R] → **Saved Pages** → ● → **Add Saved Pages** → ● → **YES** → ●

Opening Saved Pages

- 1 Press and hold [Y] → **Saved Pages** → ●



Saved Pages List

- 2 Select a page → ●

Tip

- To open a saved page from another page:
[Web Page] → [R] → **Saved Pages** → ● → **Saved Pages List** → ● → Select a page → ●

In Touch Style

- 1 [77-]
- 2 **Yahoo!** → **Saved Pages**
- 3 Tap a Saved Page

In Share Style

Saving a Page

- 1 [Web Page (Share Style)] → [R] → **Saved Pages** → ● → **Add Saved Pages** → ● → **YES** → ●

Opening Saved Pages

- 1 Press and hold [Y] → **Saved Pages** → ●



Saved Pages List appears in Split Landscape View.

- 2 Select a page → ●



More Features

Advanced

Bookmarks

- Edit a Title
- Edit a URL
- Send a Bookmark by Mail
- Check Number of Bookmarks
- Create a Folder
- Edit a Folder Name
- Change Order of Folders
- Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder
- Delete a Folder
- Delete Bookmarks

[▶ P. 6-19](#)

Saved Pages

- Edit a Title
- Protect Saved Pages
- Check Number of Saved Pages
- Delete Saved Pages

[▶ P. 6-20](#)



Connecting to the Internet

Start Here

- [Web Page] P. 6-3, P. 6-6
- [History List] P. 6-3, P. 6-7
- [URL Entry] window P. 6-3, P. 6-7

Yahoo! Keitai

Switch to PC Site Browser

[Web Page] → → **Switch to PC** → ●
→ **YES** → ● (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●)

Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

[Web Page] → → **Yahoo! Keitai** → ●

PC Site Browser

Switch Page View

[Web Page] → → **Change Disp. Mode**
→ ●

Page view toggles between PC screen and Small screen. Small screen adjusts width to handset Display.

Return to Home

[Web Page] → → **Home** → ●

History

Save a URL in History to Bookmark

[History List] → Select a record → →
Add Bookmark → ● → **YES** → ● →
Select a folder → ●

Check a URL in History

[History List] → Select a record → →
URL → ●

Delete Records in History

[History List] → Select a record → →
Delete → ●

- To Select **Delete This**
→ **Delete This** → ● → **YES** → ●
- To Select **Delete Selected**
→ **Delete Selected** → ● → Select records
→ ● → → **YES** → ●
- To Select **Delete All**
→ **Delete All** → ● → Enter Security Code
→ ● → **YES** → ●

Using URL Log

Use Previously Entered URLs

[URL Entry] window → Select a record →
● → **OK** → ●

Edit Previously Entered URLs

[URL Entry] window → Select a record →
● → Select URL entry field → ● → Edit
URL → ● → **OK** → ●

Send URLs by Mail

[URL Entry] window → Select a record →
 → **Compose Message** → ● → Enter
address, subject and text →
 Composition (S! Mail) window opens with
the URL inserted in the text.



Delete URL Records

[URL Entry] window → Select a record →

→ Delete → ●

● To Select *Delete This*

→ Delete This → ● → YES → ●

● To Select *Delete Selected*

→ Delete Selected → ● → Select records

→ ● → → YES → ●

● To Select *Delete All*

→ Delete All → ● → Enter Security Code

→ ● → YES → ●

Root Certificates

Check Certificate Details

→ Settings → ● → Connection

Settings → ● → Certificate → ● →

Select a certificate → ●

Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid

→ Settings → ● → Connection

Settings → ● → Certificate → ● →

Select a certificate → → Valid/Invalid

→ ●

This procedure switches a valid certificate to invalid and an invalid one to valid.

Page Operations

Start Here

[Web Page]P. 6-3, P. 6-6

Reload Page

[Web Page] → → Reload → ●

Save Image/Melody Files

[Web Page] → → Save File → ● (→

Object → ●) (→ Select a file → ●) →

Save → ● → YES → ● (→ Select a

folder → ●) (→ YES or NO → ●)

To play a melody, select *Play* and press ●.

To check file properties, select *Property* and press ●.

Save Background Image of a Page

[Web Page] → → Save File → ● (→

Background Image → ●) → Save → ●

→ YES → ● (→ YES or NO → ●)

To check file properties, select *Property* and press ●.

Send URL Links via S! Mail

[Web Page] → → Convenient Tools

→ ● → Compose Message → ● →

Attach URL → ● → Enter address, subject

and text →

Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted in the text.

Call a Linked Phone Number

[Web Page] → Select a phone number →

● → Voice Phone or Video Call → ● →

Dial → ●

Only available when using Yahoo! Keitai.

Send S! Mail to a Linked E-mail Address

[Web Page] → Select an e-mail address →

● → Compose S! Mail →

Access URL Link

[Web Page] → Select a URL → ●



Save Numbers/Addresses to Phone Book

[Web Page] → Select a phone number/e-mail address → → **Add to Phone Book** → → **YES** →

- To Save to Handset
 - **Phone** → → Select store method → (→ Search Phone Book → Select an entry → (twice) → Edit each item → (→ YES or NO → (→ Enter entry number →
- To Save to USIM card
 - **USIM** → → Select store method → (→ Search Phone Book → Select an entry → (twice) → Edit each item → (→ **Overwrite** or **Add** → (→ YES →

Search Information by Keyword

[Web Page] → → **Quick Search** →

- To Enter a Keyword
 - **Enter Keyword** → → Enter keyword → → or → (→ YES → (→ YES or NO → → Select an item from search results →
- To Select a Keyword from Previous Entries
 - **History** → → Select a keyword → → or → (→ YES → (→ YES or NO → → Select an item from search results →

Change Page Font Size

[Web Page] → (→ **Browser Settings** → → **Change Font Size** → → Select a font size →

Only available when the page view is *Small Screen* in PC Site Browser.

Zoom In/Out

[Web Page] → → **Zoom** → → Select a magnification →

Zoom is only available when PC Site Browser is set to *PC Screen*.

Jump to Top/End of a Page

[Web Page] → → **Convenient Tools** → → **Head of Sentence** or **End of Sentence** →

Change Character Code

[Web Page] → → **Convenient Tools** → → **Change CHR Code** → → Select a character code →

Use this procedure when characters of a page are illegible.

Play Flash® from the Beginning

[Web Page] → → **Convenient Tools** → → **Replay** →

Only available when using Yahoo! Keitai.

Check Title, URL or Certificate of a Page

[Web Page] → → **Convenient Tools** → → **Site Info** → → **Title, URL** or **Certificate** →

Show Key Guidance

[Web Page] → → **Help** → Only available when using PC Site Browser.



Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Start Here

- [Bookmark Folder List]P. 6-13
- [Bookmark List]P. 6-13
- [Saved Pages List]P. 6-14

Bookmarks

Edit a Title

[Bookmark List] → Select a bookmark → → **Edit Title** → ● → Edit title → ●

Edit a URL

[Bookmark List] → Select a bookmark → → **Edit URL** → ● → Edit URL → ●

Send a Bookmark by Mail

[Bookmark List] → Select a bookmark → → **Compose Message** or **Attach to Mail** → ● → Enter address, subject and text →

Compose Message: URL is inserted in S! Mail Composition window.
Attach to Mail: Bookmark is attached to S! Mail.

Check Number of Bookmarks

[Bookmark Folder List] / [Bookmark List]

→ → **No. of Bookmarks** → ●

The total number of bookmarks can be checked from Bookmark Folder List and the number of bookmarks in a folder can be checked from Bookmark List.

Create a Folder

[Bookmark Folder List] → → **Add Folder** → ● → Enter folder name → ●

Edit a Folder Name

[Bookmark Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Edit Folder Name** → ● → Edit folder name → ●

Change Order of Folders

[Bookmark Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Sort Folder** → ● → Select a position → ●

The order of Preset folders cannot be changed.

Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder

[Bookmark List] → Select a bookmark → → **Move** → ●

- To Select **Move This** → **Move This** → ● → Select a destination folder → ● → **YES** → ●
- To Select **Move Selected** → **Move Selected** → ● → Select a destination folder → ● → Select bookmarks → ● → → **YES** → ●
- To Select **Move All** → **Move All** → ● → Select a destination folder → ● → **YES** → ●

Delete a Folder

[Bookmark Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Delete Folder** → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → **YES** → ●

This procedure also deletes all the bookmarks saved in the folder.



Delete Bookmarks

[Bookmark List] ⇨ Select a bookmark ⇨

⇨ **Delete** ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete This*

⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ● ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete Selected*

⇨ *Delete Selected* ⇨ ● ⇨ Select

bookmarks ⇨ ● ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete All*

⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code

⇨ ● ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

Alternatively, to delete all bookmarks:

[Bookmark Folder List] ⇨ ⇨ **Delete All**

⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨ YES

⇨ ●

Saved Pages

Edit a Title

[Saved Pages List] ⇨ Select a saved page

⇨ ⇨ **Edit Title** ⇨ ● ⇨ Edit title ⇨

●

Protect Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] ⇨ Select a saved page

⇨ ⇨ **Protect ON/OFF** ⇨ ●

Use this procedure to toggle saved pages between protected and unprotected.

Check Number of Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] ⇨ ⇨ **No. of Pages**

⇨ ●

Delete Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] ⇨ Select a saved page

⇨ ⇨ **Delete** ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete This*

⇨ *Delete This* ⇨ ● ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete Selected*

⇨ *Delete Selected* ⇨ ● ⇨ Select saved

pages ⇨ ● ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

● To Select *Delete All*

⇨ *Delete All* ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code

⇨ ● ⇨ YES ⇨ ●

Protected Saved Pages cannot be deleted.

Camera



Overview	7-2
Viewfinder Indicators.....	7-3
Switching Cameras	7-5
Capturing Still Images	7-6
Capturing Still Images.....	7-6
Recording Videos	7-9
Recording Videos	7-9
Various Features	7-12
Using Smile Mode	7-12
Continuous Shooting	7-12
Add Frames to Images	7-13
Auto Timer.....	7-13
Panoramic Shooting.....	7-13
Speed Movie	7-14
Chance Capture	7-14
Recording Only Sound	7-15
Advanced Features	7-16
During Shooting.....	7-16
After Shooting.....	7-16

7



Capture still images and record videos with handset camera.

Capture Still Images/Videos

Wide Range of Image Sizes

Select image size accordingly. Use small sizes for S! Mail attachments and larger sizes for saving high resolution images.

Photo Modes

Select a mode suited to the subject/scene such as Portrait, Scenery and Sports mode.

Various Features

Features include:
Auto Timer
Continuous Shooting
Adding Frames
(P. 7-12, P. 7-13)

Smile Mode

Shutter automatically releases when Camera detects a smile (P. 7-12).

Send by S! Mail



Non-SoftBank
Mobile Phones



SoftBank
Handsets



PCs

- Still images are saved in JPEG format and videos in MPEG4 format.
- Clean the lens with soft cloth. Fingerprints or grime on the lens may result in blurred images.
- Handset movement during shooting may cause image blurring when Shake Correction is **OFF**. Setting Shake Correction to **Auto** is recommended.
- Although Camera is made with high-precision technology, some pixels may appear brighter and some darker.
- Shooting or saving images when handset is warm may affect image quality.
- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight for an extended period may result in discoloration of photo images.
- Shutter click and Auto Timer tone sound at a fixed volume even in Manner Mode.



Viewfinder Indicators

Landscape View (Share Style/Touch Style)

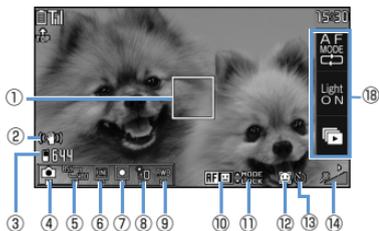
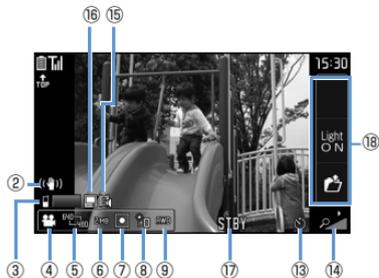


Photo Viewfinder



Video Viewfinder

Portrait View (Communication Style)

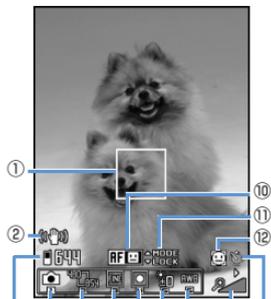
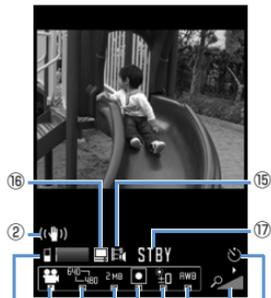


Photo Viewfinder



Video Viewfinder

①	Focus Frame (Still Images) A white frame appears for Auto Focus. Focus Frame is green when focus is locked, and red if focusing failed.
②	Shake Correction Auto
③	Storage Location (Still Image) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☑ Handset ☑ Memory Card Storage Capacity (Still Image)¹ White number: 11 or more files Yellow number: 10 or less files Red number: No memory space
	Storage Location (Video) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☑ Handset ☑ Memory Card Storage Capacity (Video)¹ Blue: 500 KB or more Yellow: Less than 500 KB Red: No memory space
④	Camera Mode <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ☑ Movie Mode ☑ Speed Movie ☑ Chance Capture ☑ Photo Mode ☑ Auto Continuous Shooting ☑ Manual Continuous Shooting ☑ Voice Mode ☑ Panorama Cap. Mode



Overview

⑤	Image Size · Photo Mode/Continuous Shooting 8M (2448 × 3264) to QCIF (176 × 144) · Panorama Cap. Mode Panorama (4096 × 480) In Communication Style or Share Style Panorama (2738 × 480) In Touch Style · Movie Mode/Speed Movie ² /Chance Capture VGA (640 × 480) to QCIF (176 × 144)
⑥	Image Quality (Still Image) Super Fine Normal Fine File Size (Video) Mail attachment ³ Long time Up to 2 MB
⑦	Photo Mode Auto Sports Mode Portrait Night Mode Smile Pet Scenery Food Backlight OFF
⑧	Brightness -2 to +2

⑨	White Balance⁴ Auto Light bulb Fine Fluorescent lamp Cloudy
⑩	AF Mode (Still Image) Face ON (Face detection + AF ON) AF ON Close-up AF OFF
⑪	AF Guidance (Still Images) For AF toggle and focus lock
⑫	Face Select Mode (Still Image) Face selecting mode
⑬	Auto Timer Auto Timer set
⑭	Zoom (16 steps) Minimum to Maximum
⑮	Recording Type (Video) Normal (Video & Sound) Video only Sound only
⑯	Image Quality (Video) Long time Fine Normal Super Fine
⑰	Recording Status (Video) Recording ready Recording

⑱	Touch Operation Icons Appear in Share Style and Touch Style. Tap to operate. AF toggle (Photo Mode) or Light ON or OFF Activate Quick Album (Photo Mode) Shot video list (Movie Mode)
---	--

- 1 Approximate value.
- 2 Switches to **QVGA (320 × 240)** in **Speed Movie**.
- 3 Available when **Select Size** is **QCIF (176 × 144)**.
- 4 Available only when **Photo Mode** is set to **OFF** (in normal and continuous shooting modes).

Auto Save

Captured still images and videos are automatically saved to handset.

Tip

- To set so that a preview window appears after recording:
 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] → → **Auto Save Set** → → **OFF** →



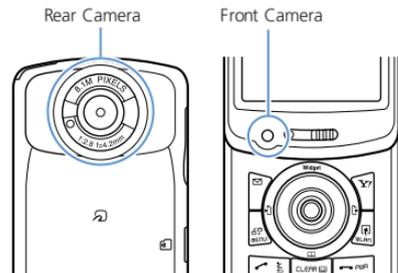
Shake Correction

Camera is equipped with Shake Correction. This function reduces camera shake in 6 axial directions for still images and 4 axial directions for videos taken with the rear camera.

Set Shake Correction off when not needed.

Switching Cameras

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ ⇨ **Front Camera** or **Rear Camera** ⇨



Rear Camera

Use for people, animals and scenery. Image appearing on Display appear as seen.

Front Camera

Use to photograph yourself. Image appearing on Display is in mirror display, but the saved image is displayed normally.



Capturing Still Images

- 1 ⇒ **Camera** ⇒ ⇒ **Photo Mode** ⇒



Photo Viewfinder

- 2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** ⇒
 When the focus locks, Focus Frame turns green and shutter is released.
 Image is automatically saved.

Tip

- Alternatively, press and hold to activate Camera in Photo Mode.

Photo Preview Window

Appears when *Auto Save Set* is set to *OFF*. Press to save image.



Photo Preview Window

- **To Discard Image and Return to Viewfinder**
 ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Tip

- Attach still images to S! Mail or set as wallpaper (P. 7-16, P. 7-17).
- Still images are saved to My Picture in Data Folder. The storage location can be changed to memory card (P. 14-22).
- Shutter clicks even if focusing fails and Focus Frame turns red.

Operations in Viewfinder

AF Change	
AF Lock	or half-press
Light	
Face Select Mode ¹	Press and hold • Press or and move Focus Frame to the subject. Press and hold again.
Zoom In	
Zoom Out	
Open Menu	
Toggle Camera Mode	
Select Size	
Quality Setting	
Photo Mode	
Adjust Brightness	
White Balance ²	
Help	

1 Available when AF is set to *Face ON*.

2 Available when *Photo Mode* is set to *OFF*.



Capturing Still Images

In Touch Style

1 → **Camera**

2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** ⇨

Press in

When the focus locks, Focus Frame turns green and shutter is released. Image is automatically saved.

■ To Use Zoom

(Zoom Out) or (Zoom In)

Tip

- Photo Preview window appears when *Auto Save Set* is set to *OFF*. Tap to save image.

Operations in Viewfinder

Tap Display to open Pallet. Tap items in Pallet to set shooting conditions.



Photo Viewfinder (Touch Style)

Tap area outside Pallet to close Pallet.

①	QUIT or BACK
②	CHG Camera-mode
③	Brightness
④	White Balance ¹
⑤	Face Select Mode ²

⑥	Other <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Front or Rear Camera • Camera Settings : Effect, Flicker or Smile Level • Auto Timer • Select Frame • Save Settings : Auto Save Set or Select to Save • Shake Correction • Icon Always Show
⑦	Photo Mode
⑧	Quality Setting
⑨	Select Size

- 1 Available when *Photo Mode* is set to *OFF*.
- 2 Toggle *Face Select Mode* and *Normal Mode*. Available when AF is set to *Face ON*.

7

Camera



More Features

Advanced

During Shooting

- Use Camera Menu
- Switch Color Modes
- Reduce Flicker
- Check Storage Capacity
- Set Shake Correction

[▶ P. 7-16](#)

After Shooting

- Zoom In/Out
- Upload Still Image to Blog
- Send Still Image with Graphic Mail
- Send Still Image by Mail
- Show Mirror Image of Shot Still Image
- Save Mirror Image of Shot Still Image
- Show Shot Still Image in Standby

[▶ P. 7-16](#)

Customize

Camera Settings

- Set Shutter Sound
- Set Display for Landscape View Shooting

[▶ P. 14-22](#)

File Storage

- Set Storage Location for Still Images

[▶ P. 14-22](#)



Recording Videos

- 1 ⇒ **Camera** ⇒ ⇒ **Movie Mode** ⇒



Video Viewfinder

- 2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** ⇒ Recording starts.
- 3 Recording ends. Video is automatically saved.

Video Preview Window

Appears when *Auto Save Set* is set to *OFF*. Press to save video.



Video Preview Window

■ **To Discard the Recording and Return to Viewfinder**

⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Tip

- Video is saved to Videos in Data Folder. The storage location can be changed to memory card (P. 14-22).

Operations in Video Viewfinder

Zoom In	
Zoom Out	
Light	
Open Menu	
Toggle Camera Mode	
Select Size	
File Size Setting	
Photo Mode	
Adjust Brightness	
White Balance	
Help	

Tip

- Key operation tones may be recorded if you adjust zoom, etc. while recording a video.



Recording Videos

In Touch Style

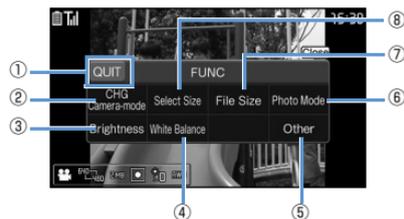
- 1 → **Camera**
- 2 Tap Display to open Pallet ⇨ **CHG Camera-mode** ⇨ **Movie Mode**
- 3 Frame image in Viewfinder ⇨ Recording starts.
 - To Use Zoom
 - (Zoom Out) or (Zoom In)
- 4 Recording ends. Video is automatically saved.

Tip

- Video Preview window appears when **Auto Save Set** is set to **OFF**. Tap to save video.
- Key operation tones may be recorded if you adjust zoom, etc. while recording a video.

Operations in Video Viewfinder

Tap Display to open Pallet. Tap items in Pallet to set shooting conditions.



Video Viewfinder

Tap area outside Pallet to close Pallet.

⑦	File Size
⑧	Select Size

①	QUIT or BACK
②	CHG Camera-mode
③	Brightness
④	White Balance
⑤	Other <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Front or Rear Camera • Quality Setting • Camera Settings: Effect or Flicker • Auto Timer • Save Settings: Auto Save Set, Select to Save or Movie Type Set • Shake Correction • Icon Always Show
⑥	Photo Mode



More Features

Advanced

During Shooting

- Use Camera Menu
- Set Image Quality
- Switch Color Modes
- Reduce Flicker
- Check Storage Capacity
- Change Video Type
- Set Shake Correction

[▶ P. 7-16](#)

After Shooting

- Upload Video to Blog
- Send Video by Mail
- Show Recorded Video in Standby
- Edit Title of Video

[▶ P. 7-16](#)

Customize

Video Settings

- Set Shutter Sound
- Set Display for Landscape View Shooting

[▶ P. 14-22](#)

File Storage

- Set Storage Location for Videos

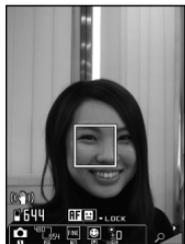
[▶ P. 14-22](#)



Using Smile Mode

Camera automatically detects a smile and automatically releases the shutter.

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder] → 4 → →



Smile Mode Viewfinder

- 2 Frame image in Viewfinder →

When the person in Focus Frame smiles, the shutter is automatically released. flashes while the smile is being detected. Image is automatically saved.

Continuous Shooting

Shoot up to 20 still images continuously.

Automatic continuous shooting mode:

Automatically shoots a set number of images at set intervals after you release the shutter.

Manual continuous shooting mode:

Shoots a set number of images, each of which is shot by releasing the shutter manually.

- See P. 14-22 for details on setting interval/ number of shots for Continuous Shooting.

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] → 1 → or →



Continuous Shooting Viewfinder (Manual)

- 2 Frame image in Viewfinder →

Image is automatically saved.

Thumbnail Preview Window

Appears when *Auto Save Set* is set to *OFF*.

Press and hold , *Save* or *Mirror Save* and press to save all still images.



Thumbnail Preview Window

- To Discard Shot Images and Return to Viewfinder

→ → YES →

Tip

- Image size can only be set to the following:
 - Communication Style: *WQVGA*, *QVGA V.* or *QCIF*
 - Share Style: *WQVGA*, *QVGA* or *QCIF*



Add Frames to Images

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder] → → **Select Frame** → → Select a folder → → Select a frame →

- 2 Compose image in the frame → Image is automatically saved.

Framed Image Preview Window

Appears when *Auto Save Set* is set to *OFF*. Press to save image.



Framed Image Preview Window

- To Discard Shot Images and Return to Viewfinder

→ → YES →

Auto Timer

- Auto Timer returns to *OFF* after shooting.

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] → → **Auto Timer** →

- 2 **ON** → → Enter time →

- 3 Frame image in Viewfinder →

Auto Timer starts countdown, and Camera Indicator flashes. About five seconds before shooting, a countdown tone sounds and illumination flashes rapidly.

To stop Auto Timer, press or .

- ▶ For Still Images

Images are automatically saved.

- ▶ For Videos



Recording ends. Videos are automatically saved.

Tip

- To shoot manually during Auto Timer countdown, press or .

Panoramic Shooting

Create a single panorama shot by moving handset horizontally while shooting.

- Up and down handset movements may cause blurred images.
- Subject image may blur depending on the subject or if the subject is moving.

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] → → →



Panorama Cap. Window



Various Features

- 2** Display one end of subject ⇔ ●
Panorama shooting starts.



Panorama Shooting

Pan horizontally (left or right) using green line as a guide. Maintain even speed, making sure **GOOD** appears. If **FAST** appears, image may not be captured properly.

- 3** ●
Panorama shooting ends.
Image is automatically saved.
Shooting automatically ends if the maximum storable capacity is reached.

Speed Movie

Use to check fast-moving subjects. Video is played back in slow-motion.

- Available in Touch Style.

- 1** ⇔ **Camera**
- 2** Tap Display to open Pallet ⇔ **CHG Camera-mode** ⇔ **Speed Movie**
- 3** Frame image in Viewfinder ⇔ Recording starts.
- 4** Recording ends.
Video is automatically saved.

Tip

- Audio is not recorded.
- Zoom is unavailable.
- Available only for Rear Camera.

Chance Capture

Continue recording video even when memory is full.

- 1** [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇔ ⇔ ⇔ ●
- 2** Frame image in Viewfinder ⇔ ●
Recording starts.
When the available recording time is over, the remaining time indication flashes.
- 3** ●
Recording ends.
Video is automatically saved.

Note

- When recorded video exceeds available memory, handset saves the maximum recordable time from the end of recording. Initial portion is deleted.



Recording Only Sound

Record only audio in Movie Mode (Voice Mode).

1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ ⇨ ⇨

2 Recording starts.

3 Recording ends.
Video is automatically saved.

Tip

- To activate Voice Mode from Main Menu:

⇨ Camera ⇨ ⇨ Voice Mode ⇨

More Features

Advanced

After Shooting

- View Images
- Save One Frame
- Save Only Selected Images
- Save as Animation
- Open an Image as Mirror Image
- Attach to Mail
- Change Frame before Saving Image

[▶ P. 7-17](#)

Customize

Camera Settings

- Set Level of Smile for Smile Mode
- Set Interval for Continuous Shooting
- Set Number of Shots for Continuous Shooting

[▶ P. 14-22](#)

File Storage

- Set Storage Location for Still Images/Videos

[▶ P. 14-22](#)



During Shooting

Start Here

[Photo Viewfinder] P. 7-6

[Video Viewfinder] P. 7-9

Use Camera Menu

[Photo Viewfinder] / [Video Viewfinder]
⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ●

Set Image Quality

[Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ **Quality Setting** ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ●

Switch Color Modes

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇒
 ⇒ **Camera Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Effect** ⇒
● ⇒ **Full Color, Sepia** or **Monochrome** ⇒
●

Reduce Flicker

[Photo Viewfinder] / [Video Viewfinder]
⇒ ⇒ **Camera Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Flicker**
⇒ ● ⇒ **Auto, Mode 1 (50Hz)** or **Mode 2 (60Hz)** ⇒ ●

Check Storage Capacity

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇒
 ⇒ **Memory Info** ⇒ ●

Change Video Type

[Video Viewfinder] ⇒ ⇒ **Movie Type Set** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Normal, Video** or **Voice** ⇒ ●

Set Shake Correction

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇒
 ⇒ **Shake Correction** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Auto** or **OFF** ⇒ ●

After Shooting

Start Here

[Photo Preview] window.....P. 7-6

[Video Preview] window.....P. 7-9

[Thumbnail Preview] window.....P. 7-12

[Framed Image Preview] window.....P. 7-13

Zoom In/Out

[Photo Preview] window ⇒ ⇒ or
 to zoom in or out.

Press to return to original size.

Upload Still Image/Video to Blog

[Photo Preview] window/[Video Preview] window ⇒ ⇒ **Blog Cont.** or **Blog Contribution** ⇒ ● (⇒ **Attach Mail, QVGA Scale Down** or **VGA Scale Down** ⇒ ●) ⇒ Compose S! Mail ⇒

Save your blog e-mail address to Blog/Mail Member beforehand (P. 5-4).

Video files exceeding the size limit are not uploaded to a blog.

Send Still Image with Graphic Mail

[Photo Preview] window ⇒ ⇒ **Insert Image** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Insert Mail** or **SubQCIF Scale Down** ⇒ ● ⇒ Create Graphic Mail ⇒

Send Still Image/Video by Mail

[Photo Preview] window/[Video Preview] window ⇒ ⇒ **Attach Image** or **Compose Message** ⇒ ● (⇒ **Attach Mail, QVGA Scale Down** or **VGA Scale Down** ⇒ ●) ⇒ Compose S! Mail ⇒

Video files exceeding the size limit are not attached.



Advanced Features

Show Mirror Image of Shot Still Image

[Photo Preview] window → → **Mirror Display** → ●

Save Mirror Image of Shot Still Image

[Photo Preview] window → → **Mirror Save** → ●

Show Shot Still Image in Standby

[Photo Preview] window → → **Set as Display** → ● → **Stand-by Display** → ●
→ Select a layout → ● → Check preview → ●

Show Recorded Video in Standby

[Video Preview] window → → **Set as Stand-by** → ●

Edit Title of Video

[Video Preview] window → → **Edit Title** → ● → Edit title → ●

View Images

[Thumbnail Preview] window → Select an image →

Press to switch to the previous/next image.

Save One Frame

[Thumbnail Preview] window → Select an image → ● → → **Save** or **Mirror Save** → ●

Save Only Selected Images

[Thumbnail Preview] window → Select an image → ● → Repeat the same step →

→ **Save** or **Mirror Save** → ●

Select a checked image and press ● to cancel the selection.

Save as Animation

[Thumbnail Preview] window → → **Store All&Anime** → ● → **Save** or **Mirror Save** → ● → Select a destination → ●

Open an Image as Mirror Image

[Thumbnail Preview] window → → **Mirror Display** → ●

Attach to Mail

[Thumbnail Preview] window → Select an image → (twice) → **Attach Image** → ●
(→ **Attach Mail/QVGA Scale Down** → ●)
→ Compose S! Mail →

Change Frame before Saving Image

[Framed Image Preview] window → → **Change Frame** → ● → Select a folder → ● → Select a frame → ● (twice)



About TV	8-2
TV Antenna.....	8-3
Initial Setup	8-3
TV Windows.....	8-4
Watching TV	8-6
Time Shift Playback While Watching	8-7
Data Broadcasts (Japanese)	8-8
Program Guide	8-9
Recording/Playing Programs	8-11
Recording Programs.....	8-11
Playing Recorded Programs.....	8-11
View/Record Timer	8-14
Setting View Timer.....	8-14
Setting Record Timer	8-14
Advanced Features	8-16
Channel Settings	8-16
Watching TV	8-16
Data Broadcasts.....	8-16
TV Link	8-17
Recording Programs.....	8-17
Playing Programs.....	8-18
View/Record Timer	8-18

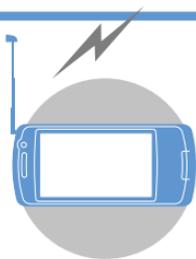


Handset supports One Seg Digital TV for cellular phones.

- One Seg is available only in Japan.

One Seg

One Seg is a digital TV broadcasting service for mobile devices. It uses one segment of the terrestrial digital band for TV and data broadcasts that you enjoy at home, on your handset.



Watch TV in Widescreen

Data Broadcasts

Enjoy data broadcasts while watching TV. Access program-related information and even participate in the program (P. 8-8).

Record Programs

Record a program on memory card while viewing it and enjoy it again at a later time (P. 8-11).

View and Record Timer

Book programs you want to view/record. Program Guide can be used for booking programs (P. 8-14).

Quick Info

Sender and subject information appears for new message while TV is active (P. 14-5).

Precautions

- Never watch TV while riding a bicycle, motorcycle or driving a car. You may not hear the sounds around you clearly, or TV image/sound may distract you creating the risk of accident. Even while walking, pay attention to the traffic around you. Be especially careful at railway crossings and pedestrian crosswalks.
- TV image/sound may be affected if a call or message is received while watching TV.
- TV information (TV links or data you entered in Data Broadcast Mode) saved on handset cannot be transferred to another handset when you change your handset to another model or when it is repaired. Keep a memo of necessary information.
- TV is available when USIM Card is inserted and with a valid SoftBank contract.
- Extend TV Antenna completely to improve signal reception. If image quality does not improve, move handset away from body or change locations.



- TV image/sound may deteriorate or signal reception may become impossible in the following areas:
 - Areas far from signal towers
 - Mountain areas or places beside tall buildings
 - In tunnels, underground malls or buildings with a lot of signal obstructions
- For more information on One Seg services, visit the following website:
The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting
From PC: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/>
From handset: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/> (Japanese)

When You First Activate TV

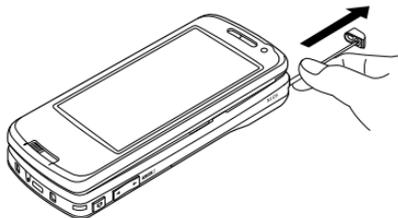
- The first time you activate TV, the following information appears.
- How to change Styles
 - Functions unavailable in Landscape View
- Read information then press **OK**, select **YES**, and press **OK**. If **NO** is selected, information no longer appears when activating TV.

TV Antenna

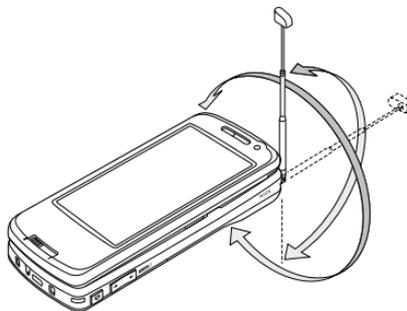
- Do not forcefully rotate Antenna.

Extend

- 1 Extend until Antenna stops

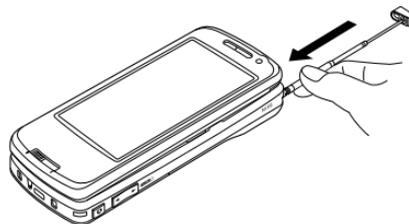


- 2 Adjust Antenna direction



Retract

- 1 Hold base of Antenna and push in



Initial Setup

Configure channel settings for your area and save stations to a channel list.

- 1 **MENU** → **TV** → **Channel Settings** → **OK**
- 2 **Select Area** → **OK** → **Select area** → **OK** → **Select prefecture/city** → **OK** → **YES** → **OK**
Stations for the area are saved to a channel list.

Tip

- If signals from stations of the selected area are difficult to receive, search for stations using the **Automatic** option.



TV Windows



Landscape View



Portrait View

①	Quick Info Ticker scrolls across top of Display for new messages (P. 14-5).
②	Channel
③	Program Title
④	Subtitles
⑤	Sound Effect on (always on)
⑥	TV Effect <input type="checkbox"/> OFF Sound Effects OFF <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> CS5.1ch CS5.1ch <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Auto Auto <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Live <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Concert <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Drama <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Sports <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> News <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Variety <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Movie Suitable for Each Genre <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manner Manner Mode
⑦	Signal Strength <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Strong <input type="checkbox"/> Moderate <input type="checkbox"/> Weak <input type="checkbox"/> Out of Broadcasting Area
⑧	Receiving Subtitle Information <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Subtitles Available
⑨	Volume
⑩	TV Power Saving <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> TV Power Saving Active

⑪	Recording Status <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> REC Recording <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> REC Timer Recording Activated <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PAUSE (Red) Recording Paused Time Shift Status <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PAUSE (Green) Pause <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PLAY Normal Speed <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1.3 1.3x Speed <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 2x 2x Speed
⑫	EPG Program guide.
⑬	Data Broadcast
⑭	TV View Mode <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Image Mode <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data Broadcast Mode



More Features

Advanced

Channel Settings

- Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically
- Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List
- Switch Channel Lists

[▶ P. 8-16](#)

Customize

Channel List

- Change Title of Channel List
- Delete a Channel List
- Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers
- Delete a Channel

[▶ P. 14-20](#)

Other Settings

- Check TV Settings
- Reset Channel Settings
- Clear Data Broadcast Memory
- Reset TV Settings

[▶ P. 14-21](#)



Watching TV

- 1 → TV → → Watch TV →



TV Window

- 2 **Use Keypad to select a channel**
Press for channel 10, for channel 11, and for channel 12.
- 3 or press and hold to end TV → YES →

Tip

- TV volume is "0" when Manner Mode is active and no earphone is connected. Adjust with .
- Play TV audio from any Bluetooth® compatible audio device (P. 13-5).

TV Operations

Pause or Continue ¹	
Change Channel in Order	
Automatically Search for Receivable Channels	Press and hold • Press or to stop search
Adjust Volume	or press and hold or
Mute	
Show/Hide Subtitles ²	Press and hold
Toggle Windows ³	Press and hold Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast
Switch to Data Broadcast Mode ³	

- 1 TV viewing resumes in Time Shift playback.
- 2 Available in Landscape View.
- 3 Available in Portrait View.

In Touch Style

- 1 → TV → Watch TV
- 2 Tap Display to open Pallet
- 3 Use Pallet to select channel
- 4 Tap Display to close Pallet
Tap area outside Pallet.
- 5 Open Pallet to end TV → → YES

TV Operations

Tap Display to open Pallet.



TV Window (Touch Style)



①	QUIT
②	FUNC The following functions are available. Sound Effect, V.Img Effect: Set sound and visual effects to suit program. Screen OFF: Display view turns off, audio remains. Press any button or change Style to activate view. Subtitles OFF or Subtitles ON: Toggle on/off.
③	Pause or Resume Pallet for Time Shift playback opens (P. 8-7).
④	Channel Tap channel icon to open channel selection Pallet. Alternatively, tap or to cycle through channels.
⑤	Adjust Volume* Drag or tap at target volume level to adjust.

* Alternatively, use or .

Tip

- Subtitles are off while Pallet is open.

In Share Style

1 ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ⇒ **Watch TV** ⇒

2 **Use Keypad to select a channel**

3 or **press and hold** to end **TV** ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Taking Calls While Watching TV

When a call arrives or when Alarm or Schedule Alarm is activated while watching TV, TV is interrupted to receive the call, etc. TV resumes after call or function ends.

Time Shift Playback While Watching

Resume watching TV even after pausing with playback.

- Time Shift playback is available when TV is paused or you receive a call.
- Time Shift playback is unavailable when *Time Shift Setup* is set to *Auto OFF*.

1 **[TV] window** ⇒

TV is paused.

2

Time Shift playback starts.

Note

- Handset stores up to two minutes of recording. Data is overwritten starting from the oldest data. If you resume viewing after pausing for more than two minutes, viewing starts from the beginning of stored data (not from where you paused).

Tip

- Other channels are unavailable while TV is paused or during Time Shift playback.

Playback Operations

Start from Beginning of Stored Playback Data	
Change Playback Speed	
End Playback	

In Touch Style

1 **[TV] window (Touch Style)** ⇒

TV is paused.

2

Time Shift playback starts.



Playback Operations

Tap Display to open Pallet.



①	QUIT End TV.
②	FUNC The following functions are available. Sound Effect, V.Img Effect: Set sound and visual image effects to suit program. Screen OFF: Display view turns off, audio remains. Press any button or change Style to activate view. Subtitles OFF or Subtitles ON: Toggle show/hide.
③	View Resume TV.

④	Start Time Shift playback from beginning of stored One Seg data. or Pause or resume Time Shift playback. , or Select playback speed (1.3 times, 2 times or Normal).
⑤	Adjust Volume* Drag or tap at target volume level to adjust.

* Alternatively, use or .

Data Broadcasts (Japanese)

Data broadcasts are available while watching TV in Portrait view. Access various kinds of program-related and other information in Data Broadcast Mode.

1 [TV] window →



Data Broadcast Mode Window

Data Broadcast Mode is activated.

2 Select a link →

If a confirmation for Internet access appears, select **YES** and press to access the Internet. Select **YES (By default)** and confirmation no longer appears.



TV Link Operations

Select a Link	
Confirm Selection of a Link	
Switch Pages	
Previous Page*	
Toggle Windows	Press and hold Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast
Switch to TV Mode	

* Available when connected to a data broadcast website.

Note

- Viewing data broadcast information requires no fees. However, accessing Internet links will incur transmission fees.
- Data broadcasts are unavailable in Landscape view.

Program Guide

- Use Program Guide to set timer to record/activate programs.

1 → **TV** → → **Program Guide** →

See Program Guide help for further operations.

Before first using Program Guide, **configure initial settings and agree to the terms of use.** Follow the onscreen instructions.

More Features

Advanced

Watching TV

- Show Program Information
- Adjust Brightness
- Switch Main & Sub Audio
- Switch Audio Channels
- Show Current Channel List Information
- Add Current Station to Channel List
- Select a Program

[▶ P. 8-16](#)

Data Broadcasts

- Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast
- Check Certificate for SSL Page
- Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast

[▶ P. 8-16](#)

TV Link

- Save TV Links
- Access Pages/Information from TV Links
- Show Details of a TV Link
- Show Number of Saved TV Links
- Delete TV Links

[▶ P. 8-17](#)



Customize

Image & Sound

- Set Subtitle Display
- Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View
- Save Battery by Dimming Backlight
- Keep Backlight On When Viewing TV
- Set Backlight Duration for Viewing TV
- Set Sound Effects
- Set Visual Image Effects
- Set TV to Pause or Continue for Incoming Calls (Time Shift Playback)

[▶ P. 14-20](#)

Data Broadcasts

- Set Whether to Show Images in Pages Accessed from Data Broadcasts
- Enable/Disable Sound Effects of Data Broadcasts
- Show Confirmation Window Again

[▶ P. 14-21](#)



Recording Programs

TV programs can be recorded on memory card while you are watching them.

- Data broadcasts are not saved with recording.

1 [TV] window ⇨ Press and hold

Recording starts.

■ To Capture a Screenshot

⇨

Captured screenshots are saved to TV folder in Data Folder.

2

Recording ends.

■ When Memory Becomes Full

Recording ends and the recorded portion is saved.

Note

- The channel remains fixed during recording.
- Recording certain programs is restricted. If a restriction is activated while recording a program, recording automatically ends, and the part that has been recorded so far is saved.
- When appears to indicate handset is out of the broadcasting area, recording is paused. When the signal strength recovers to weak or better, recording automatically resumes.
- Recordings that you make are for personal use only. Other uses require the permission of the copyright holder.

Playing Recorded Programs

1 ⇨ Data Folder ⇨ ⇨



2 Video ⇨ ⇨ microSD ⇨



Recorded Program List

■ To View Captured Screenshots

⇨ Image ⇨ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨

3 Select a file ⇨



Recorded Program Playback Window

■ To Stop Playback

⇨ CLEAR

Tip

- If a program was stopped partway through, resume playback from that point. Select YES and press .



Recording/Playing Programs

Playback Operations

Pause/Play	or Lock
Adjust Volume	or press and hold
	or
Mute	
Fast Play ¹	
Frame Forward	during pause
Skip Ahead 30 Seconds ²	Press and hold or press and hold
Skip Back 30 Seconds ²	Press and hold or press and hold
Toggle Sound Effects	
Show/Hide Subtitles	Press and hold

- 1 Toggle normal and fast play.
- 2 Available when recorded program is 30 seconds or more.

In Touch Style

1 → TV ⇄ Video

2 Video ⇄ microSD

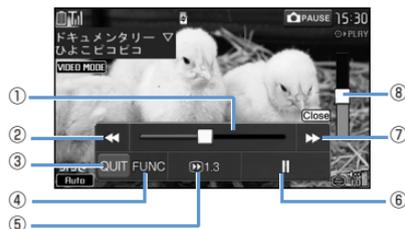
- To View Captured Screenshots
⇄ Image ⇄ Tap a folder

3 Tap a file

- To Stop Playback
Tap Display to open Pallet ⇄ QUIT

Operation During Program Playback

Tap Display to open Pallet.



Recorded Program Playback Window (Touch Style)

- 1 Playback Position
Drag left or right, or tap playback bar at target position to start playback at that position.

2	Skip Back 30 Seconds ¹
3	QUIT
4	FUNC The following functions are available. <i>Sound Effect, V.Img Effect</i> : Set sound and visual image effects to suit program. <i>Screen OFF</i> : Display view turns off, audio remains. Press any button or change Style to activate view. <i>Subtitles OFF or Subtitles ON</i> : Toggle show/hide.
5	Select , or (1.3 times, Normal or Frame Forward). Frame Forward available while playback paused.
6	Pause/Play
7	Skip Ahead 30 Seconds ¹
8	Adjust Volume ² Drag or tap at target volume level to adjust.

- 1 Alternatively, press and hold or press and hold for Skip Ahead 30 Seconds or Skip Back 30 Seconds. Available when recorded program is 30 seconds or more.
- 2 Alternatively, use or to adjust.



In Share Style

- 1 **MENU** → **TV** → ● → **Video** → ●
- 2 **Video** → ● → **microSD** → ●
 - To View Captured Screenshots
→ **Image** → ● → Select a folder → ●
- 3 **Select a file** → ●
 - To Stop Playback
→ **CLEAR**



Recorded Program Playback Window (Share Style)

Playback Operations

Pause/Play	● or LOCK
Adjust Volume	🔊 or press and hold 🔊 77- or ULRN
Mute	🔇
Fast Play ¹	⏩
Frame Forward	⏪ during pause
Skip Ahead 30 Seconds ²	Press and hold ⏩ or press and hold 77-
Skip Back 30 Seconds ²	Press and hold ⏪ or press and hold ULRN
Toggle Sound Effects	🔊
Show/Hide Subtitles	Press and hold 📄

- 1 Toggle normal and fast play.
- 2 Available when recorded program is 30 seconds or more.

More Features

Advanced

Recording Programs

- Edit Title of a Recorded Program
- Reset Title of a Recorded Program
- Switch Views of Recorded Program List
- Check Information on a Recorded Program
- Check Volume of Recorded Programs
- Delete Recorded Programs

▶ P. 8-17

Playing Programs

- Specify Point to Start Playback

▶ P. 8-18

Customize

Recording Programs

- Continue/End Recording at Low Battery

▶ P. 14-21



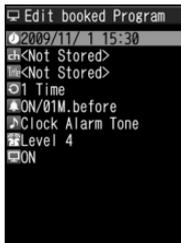
Setting View Timer

- 1 MENU ⇒ TV ⇒ ● ⇒ **Booking Program List** ⇒ ●



Booking Program List

- 2 [TV] ⇒ **New** ⇒ ●



View Timer Setting Window

- 3 [OK] ⇒ ● ⇒ ●

- ▶ To Enter Date Manually
Enter Date ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter date and time ⇒ ●
- ▶ To Select a Date from Calendar
Choose Date ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a date ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter time ⇒ ●

- 4 [CH] ⇒ ● ⇒ **Select a channel** ⇒ ●

- 5 [MUTE] ⇒ ● ⇒ **ON, ON/Set Time or OFF** ⇒ ● (⇒ Select a time ⇒ ●)

- 6 [EXIT]

Note

- Set a timer start date and time that is more than one minute from the present time.

Tip

- When the set time arrives, alarm sounds for about five minutes and information (start date/time, channel, program title and animation) appears. Press any key to stop alarm tone.

Setting Record Timer

- 1 MENU ⇒ TV ⇒ ● ⇒ **Timer Recording List** ⇒ ●



Timer Recording List

- 2 [TV] ⇒ **New** ⇒ ●



Record Timer Setting Window



View/Record Timer

3 ⇨

Enter date and time to start/end recording.

▶ **To Enter Date Manually**

Enter Date ⇨ ⇨ Enter date and time to start and end recording ⇨

▶ **To Select a Date from Calendar**

Choose Date ⇨ ⇨ Select a date ⇨ ⇨ Enter time ⇨

4 ⇨ ⇨ **Select a channel** ⇨

5 ⇨ ⇨ **ON or OFF** ⇨

6 (⇨ **YES or YES (Confirm Once)** ⇨)

Note

- Set a timer start date and time that is more than one minute from the present time.

Tip

- One minute before recording starts, alarm sounds for about two seconds. Information appears on Display (start and end dates and times, channel, program title and animation) and TV activates. Recording starts at the set start time.

More Features

Advanced

View/Record Timer

- Select a Timer Alarm Tone
- Enter Title of Booked Program
- Set Regular Activation of View or Record Timer
- Set Timer Alarm Volume
- Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window
- Set Priority at Recording Start Time When a TV & Music Group Function is Active
- Edit View/Record Timer Settings
- Change Order of Booked Programs
- Delete Booked Programs
- Check Volume of Recorded Programs
- Check Result of Timer Recording

▶ P. 8-18



Channel Settings

Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically

MENU → TV → ● → Channel Settings → ●
→ Automatic → ● → YES → ● → YES
→ ● → Enter title → ●

👉 When a Remote Control Number applies to two or more channels, select an area manually.

Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List

MENU → TV → ● → Channel List → ● →
Not Stored → [F] → Channel Settings →
● → Select Area → ● → Select area →
● → Select prefecture/city → ● → YES
→ ●

Switch Channel Lists

MENU → TV → ● → Channel List → ● →
Select a channel list → ●

Watching TV

Start Here

[TV] windowP. 8-6

Show Program Information

[TV] window → [F] → Program Info → ●

Adjust Brightness

[TV] window → [F] → Display Setting →
● → Brightness → ● → Select a level →
●

Switch Main & Sub Audio

[TV] window → [F] → Sound → ● →
Main/Sub Sound → ● → Select an audio
output option → ●

Switch Audio Channels

[TV] window → [F] → Sound → ● →
Sound Switch → ● → Select an audio
channel → ●

👉 Sound Switch is available when there is more than one audio channel.

Show Current Channel List Information

[TV] window → [F] → Channel → ● →
Channel Info → ●

Add Current Station to Channel List

[TV] window → [F] → Channel → ● →
Add Channel → ● → YES → ●

👉 This function is useful when you find new stations via auto-search (press and hold).

Select a Program

[TV] window → [F] → Channel → ● →
Tune Service → ● → Select a service
(program) → ●

👉 Tune Service is available when more than one service (program) is broadcast from the same station.

Data Broadcasts

Start Here

[Data Broadcast Mode] windowP. 8-8

Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast

[Data Broadcast Mode] window → [F] →
Data Broadcast → ● → Reload Contents
→ ●



Advanced Features

Check Certificate for SSL Page

[Data Broadcast Mode] window → [FR] → **Data Broadcast** → ● → **Show Certificate** → ●

Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast

[Data Broadcast Mode] window → [FR] → **Data Broadcast** → ● → **Back to Data BC** → ●

TV Link

Start Here

[Data Broadcast Mode] window P. 8-8

Save TV Links

[Data Broadcast Mode] window → Select an item → ● (→ **YES** or **YES (By default)**) → ●

Some TV links may have expiration dates.

Access Pages/Information from TV Links

[MENU] → **TV** → ● → **TV Link** → ●

Types of TV links are indicated by the following icons:

- Memo information
- Data broadcast site
- Internet content

Show Details of a TV Link

[MENU] → **TV** → ● → **TV Link** → ● → Select a TV link → [FR] → **Display detail** → ●

Show Number of Saved TV Links

[MENU] → **TV** → ● → **TV Link** → ● → [FR] → **No. of TVlink** → ●

Delete TV Links

[MENU] → **TV** → ● → **TV Link** → ● → Select a TV link → [FR]

- To Select **Delete This**
→ **Delete This** → ● → **YES** → ●
- To Select **Delete selected**
→ **Delete selected** → ● → Select a TV link
→ ● → Repeat step of selecting TV link → ●
→ **YES** → ●
- To Select **Delete All**
→ **Delete All** → ● → Enter Security Code
→ ● → **YES** → ●

Recording Programs

Start Here

[Recorded Program List] P. 8-11

Edit Title of a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List] → Select a program → [FR] → **Edit Title** → ● → Edit title → ●

Reset Title of a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List] → Select a program → [FR] → **Initialize Title** → ● → **YES** → ●

Switch Views of Recorded Program List

[Recorded Program List] → [FR] → **Switch List** → ● → **Title** or **Title + Image** → ●

Check Information on a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List] → Select a program → [FR] → **Show Info** → ●

Check Volume of Recorded Programs

[Recorded Program List] → [FR] → **Check Memory** → ●



Delete Recorded Programs

[Recorded Program List] → Select a program →

- To Select *Delete This*
→ *Delete This* → → *YES* →
- To Select *Multiple-choice*
→ *Multiple-choice* → → Select a file → → (repeat to select another file) → → *Delete* → → *YES* →
- To Select *Delete All*
→ *Delete All* → → Enter Security Code → → *YES* →

View/Record Timer

Start Here

- [Booking Program List] P. 8-14
- [View Timer Setting] window P. 8-14
- [Timer Recording List] P. 8-14
- [Record Timer Setting] window P. 8-14

Select a Timer Alarm Tone

[View Timer Setting] window → →
 → Select a folder → (→ Select a sub folder →) → Select an alarm tone →

Enter Title of Booked Program

[View Timer Setting] window / [Record Timer Setting] window → → → Enter program title →

Set Regular Activation of View or Record Timer

[View Timer Setting] window / [Record Timer Setting] window → → → *1 Time, Daily or Select Day* →
 When *Select Day* is specified, select days of the week and press .

Set Timer Alarm Volume

[View Timer Setting] window / [Record Timer Setting] window → → → to adjust volume →

Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window

[View Timer Setting] window → → → *ON* or *OFF* →
 When *ON* is set, press twice, select *YES* and press from Alarm Notification window to activate TV and watch the booked program.

Set Priority at Recording Start Time When a TV & Music Group Function is Active

[Record Timer Setting] window → → → *Recording or Operation Preferred* → →
 When *Recording* is set, the function in operation is interrupted/ended, and recording starts. When *Operation Preferred* is set, a confirmation asking to start recording appears.

Edit View/Record Timer Settings

[Booking Program List] / [Timer Recording List] → Select a booked program → → Edit each item →

Playing Programs

Start Here

[Recorded Program Playback] window P. 8-11

Specify Point to Start Playback

[Recorded Program Playback] window → → *Location* → → to specify point →



Change Order of Booked Programs

[Booking Program List] / [Timer Recording List] → → **Sort** → → Select a criterion →

Delete Booked Programs

[Booking Program List] / [Timer Recording List] → Select a program → → **Delete** →

- To Select *Delete This*
→ *Delete This* → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete selected*
→ *Delete selected* → → Select programs → → Repeat step of selecting programs → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete All*
→ *Delete All* → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

Select *Delete past* to delete old bookings.

Check Volume of Recorded Programs

[Timer Recording List] → → **Memory Info** →

Check Result of Timer Recording

→ **TV** → → **Result Timer Rec** →

Press to play the recorded program.

Music Player & S! Appli



About Music Player	9-2
Playback Windows	9-3
Downloading Music	9-4
Music Playback.....	9-5
Playing Music.....	9-5
Using Playlists	9-6
S! Appli.....	9-8
About S! Appli.....	9-8
Downloading S! Appli.....	9-8
Activating S! Appli	9-9
Advanced Features	9-10
Music Player.....	9-10
S! Appli	9-12

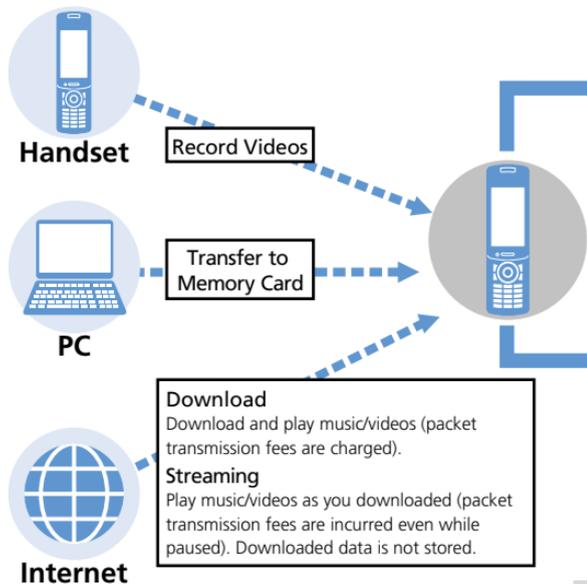
9



About Music Player

Use Music Player to play and organize songs on handset.

- Access the Internet to download music.
- Some files are unplayable depending on their format.
- Alarm notification, received calls, etc. while playing music will pause play. For videos, select the same video to resume watching.



Play & Organize Songs/Videos on Handset

Save Music

Inbox

Save downloaded music, or music transferred or copied from Memory Card.

WMA

Save WMA format music.

microSD

Save music moved or copied from handset or PC.

Save Videos

Inbox

Save downloaded videos, videos attached to messages and videos moved/copied from Memory Card.

Camera

Save recorded videos.

microSD

Save captured videos and videos moved or copied from handset.

Tip

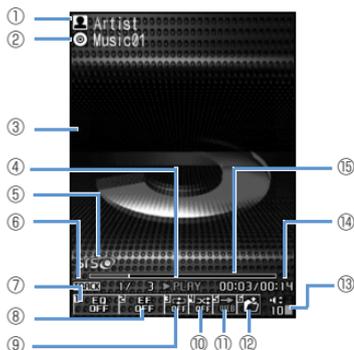
- Be sure to save music files from PC to Memory Card in the following folder.
¥PRIVATE¥MYFOLDER¥My Items¥Music



About Music Player

Playback Windows

Normal Screen Mode



Full Screen Mode
(For Video Playback)



①	Artist Name <Creator> ¹
②	Title
③	Playback Image or Jacket Image <Video> ¹
④	Playback Status ▶PLAY Play ⏸PAUSE Pause ⏩FF Fast Forward ⏪REW Rewind ⏴SLOW Slow Play ² ⏴PLAY Fast Play ²
⑤	Sound Effect on (always on)
⑥	Current Track/Total Tracks in Folder (Current File Number/Total Files in Folder)
⑦	Equalizer EQ OFF Pop Live Vocal Break CLight Woods Ballad Rap Concert Rock Kiss Loud For each genre of music EQ EQ EQ User1 User2 User3 User settings
⑧	Sound Effect EF OFF TrioMelo CSSJLH Basscomb Alternative Claribite Wave Wave Wave LiveBall For different song styles EF EF EF User1 User2 User3 User settings
⑨	Repeat Mode OFF ⏮ Repeat All ³ ⏮ Repeat One ³
⑩	Shuffle Mode ⌘ ON ³ OFF

⑪	To Web Connect to the URL in the song.
⑫	Song/file Selection
⑬	Volume
⑭	Elapsed Playback Time/Total Playback Time
⑮	Playback Position ▬ indicates the current playback position. Use ⏮ to move playback position during pause.
⑯	Side Key Function Indicates current Side Key operation.

- 1 Descriptions in < > apply to video playback.
- 2 Available during video playback.
- 3 Available during music playback.



About Music Player

Downloading Music

- Check the fees, expiration date, etc. on the download site.

1  ⇒ **Music** ⇒  ⇒ **Download Music** ⇒  ⇒ **YES** ⇒ 

2 Follow onscreen instructions

Transferring from PC

- Convert music CD data to WMA format and store to memory card using Windows Media® Player.

1  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **External Connection** ⇒  ⇒ **USB Mode Setting** ⇒  ⇒ **MTP Mode** ⇒ 

2 Connect handset to your PC with a USB cable

Music can now be transferred by operation from your PC. See the Help for “Windows Media® Player” for details.

3 Transfer WMA data from your PC to memory card

4 Once transferred, remove USB cable from your PC and handset Remove from PC according to method for the OS.

Note

- Windows Media® Player 10 is unsupported. Use Windows Media® Player 11.

Tip

- After transferring WMA data, return *USB Mode Setting* to *Communication Mode*.



Playing Music

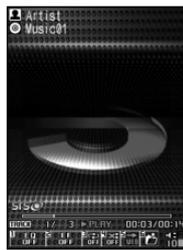
1 ⇒ **Music** ⇒

2 Select a folder ⇒



Song List

3 Select a song ⇒



Music Playback Window
(Video Playback Window)

Tip

- Use any Bluetooth® compatible audio device (P. 13-5).
- To play videos downloaded or recorded with camera:
 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Videos** ⇒
 ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ Specify a video to play

Playback Operations

Pause/Play	or
Adjust Volume	or press and hold
	or
Play from Beginning Play Previous Song or Video	or press and hold
Play Next Song/Video	or press and hold
Rewind	Press and hold
Fast Forward	Press and hold
Move Playback Position	during pause
Open/Close Menu	
Select a Song/File	or

Equalizer*	
Sound Effect*	
Repeat Mode*	
Shuffle Mode*	
Access the Internet	
Toggle Jacket Image	or When there are several jacket images.
End Playback	

* Press key to toggle on/off.

In Touch Style

1

2 **Music** ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ Select a song

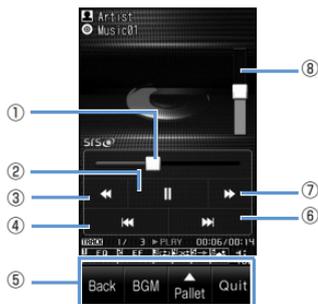
Tip

- To play videos downloaded or recorded with camera:
 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ **Videos** ⇒ Tap a folder ⇒ Tap a data



Playback Operations

In Video Playback window, tap Display to open Pallet.



Music Playback Window (Touch Style)



Video Playback Window (Touch Style)

①	Playback Position Drag left or right, or tap playback bar at target position to start playback at that position.
②	Pause or Resume
③	Rewind
④	Play from Beginning Play Previous Song or Video
⑤	Touchkeys (P. 1-13)
⑥	Play Next Song or Video
⑦	Fast Forward
⑧	Adjust Volume
⑨	QUIT
⑩	FUNC • In Music Playback window, tap to open. Equalizer: Change sound quality. Effect: Change sound effect. ¹ or ¹ : Change repeat mode. ¹ or ¹ : Change shuffle mode. Connect to URL: Connect to URL in a song. Lyric ¹ : Access lyrics. Jacket image ¹ : Open jacket image. Select File ² : Select file to play.
⑪	Slow Play or Normal Play

- 1 Available when playing music.
- 2 Available when playing videos.

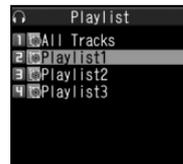
Using Playlists

Use playlists to play songs by genre or by artist, or gather your favorite songs and arrange them in your favorite order.

- Songs saved on memory card can also be added to playlists.

Creating a Playlist

- 1 ⇒ **Music** ⇒ ⇒ **Playlist** ⇒



Playlists Window

- 2 ⇒ **Create Playlist** ⇒
- 3 **Select a folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a song** ⇒
Repeat this step to add other songs.
- 4 **When all songs are selected** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter playlist name** ⇒



Playing Songs from Playlist

- [Playlists] window** → **Select a playlist** →

To play all songs in the playlist, press



Playlist

- Select a song** →

Songs play back in the listed order.

Tip

- To play all songs, select *All Tracks* in Playlists window and press (twice).

More Features

Advanced

Playing Music/Video

- Resume Playback
- Use Menu
- File Information
- Repeat
- Set Preferred Sound Quality
- Set Preferred Sound Effect
- Specify Play Start Position
- Change Video Playback Speed
- Use a Different Function While Playing Music
- Open Lyrics
- Open Jacket Image
- Check Operation Methods

▶ P. 9-10

Organizing Songs

- Set a Song as Ringtone
- Search for Songs
- Change Order of Songs
- Check Volume of Saved Music
- Delete All Music in WMA Folder

▶ P. 9-11

Playlists

- Add Songs to Playlist
- Change Order of Playlist Songs
- Cancel Playlist Songs
- Edit a Playlist Name
- Add All Music in Memory Card to Playlist

- Copy a Playlist
- Check Playlist Information
- Delete Playlists

▶ P. 9-11

Customize

Playback Window

- Change Design of Playback Window
- Set Image Display Size

▶ P. 14-23



About S! Appli

S! Appli are applications designed for SoftBank handsets. Download games and other applications.

About Lifestyle-Appli

Handset includes Osaifu-Keitai®-compatible S! Appli "Lifestyle-Appli" (P. 11-3). Change Lifestyle-Appli settings as any other S! Appli.

About Network S! Appli

Since network S! Appli require network (Internet) connection, transmission fees are incurred. A confirmation may appear when an application is connecting to the network. Follow onscreen instructions.

Note

- S! Appli available only in Communication Style.

Tip

- For information on transmission fees, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-57).

About License Information

To check Java™ and JBlend™ license information:

- 1 ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ⇒ **Information** ⇒

Downloading S! Appli

- 1 ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ⇒ **S! Appli List** ⇒ ⇒ **Download S! App** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒
- 2 **Select an S! Appli** ⇒ (twice)▶
 - ▶ **To Activate S! Appli Right Away**
YES ⇒ ⇒ **Select an S! Appli** ⇒
 - ▶ **To Activate S! Appli Later**
NO ⇒

Note

- Check the battery level before downloading S! Appli. If the battery level is low, download may fail.
- If you replace USIM Card due to damage or loss, downloaded S! Appli are no longer available.
- If you initialize handset when using an S! Appli moved to Memory Card, the S! Appli will no longer be usable. You will need to download it again.
- When using an S! Appli moved to Memory Card, using the procedures below will resave the S! Appli to your handset and the S! Appli in Memory Card will no longer be usable.
 - Download the same S! Appli with no Memory Card inserted
 - Download the same S! Appli with different Memory Card inserted
 Use an S! Appli resaved to handset as it is in handset, or again move it to Memory Card.

Tip

- For how to download Lifestyle-Appli, see P. 11-2.
- See S! Appli's Help menu or the download site for operational information.



Activating S! Appli

- 1 ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ⇒ **S! Appli List** ⇒



S! Appli List

- 2 **Select an application** ⇒

Tip

- S! Appli is paused when a call arrives. When the call ends, a prompt appears. Select **Resume** to resume the S! Appli.
- To end S! Appli:
While running, ⇒ **End** ⇒

More Features

Advanced

S! Appli

- Check S! Appli Information
- Check Volume of Saved S! Appli
- Delete an S! Appli

▶ P. 9-12)

Customize

When Running S! Appli

- Set Sound Volume
- Set Vibration
- Set Backlight
- Set Blinking of Backlight
- Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Connect to Network
- Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information
- Reset Security Settings of S! Appli

▶ P. 14-23)

S! Appli

- Reset S! Appli Settings
- Delete All S! Appli

▶ P. 14-23)



Music Player

Start Here

[Music Playback] window	P. 9-5
[Video Playback] window	P. 9-5
[Song List]	P. 9-5
[Playlists] window	P. 9-6
[Playlist]	P. 9-7

Playing Music/Video

Resume Playback

→ **Music** → ● → **Resume Play** → ●

Use Menu

[Music Playback] window/ [Video Playback] window → → Select an item → ●*
*Press to toggle.

File Information

[Music Playback] window/ [Video Playback] window → → **Detail Info** → ● → **File Property** or **Video Info** → ●

Repeat

[Music Playback] window → → **Action Setting** → ● → **Repeat Setting** → ● → **All Repeat** or **Single Repeat** → ●

Set Preferred Sound Quality

[Music Playback] window/ [Video Playback] window → → **Action Setting** → ● → **Sound Effect** → ● → **Equalizer** → ● → Select user setting 1 to 3 → → Set level for each wavelength → ●

- To return sound quality to initial state
→ Select user setting 1 to 3 → (twice) → ●

Set Preferred Sound Effect

[Music Playback] window/ [Video Playback] window → → **Action Setting** → ● → **Sound Effect** → ● → **Effect** → ● → Select user setting 1 to 3 → → Set level for each effect → ●

- To set by existing effects
→ Select user setting 1 to 3 → → → Select effect → ●
- To return sound effect to initial state
→ Select user setting 1 to 3 → (twice) → ●

Specify Play Start Position

[Music Playback] window → → **Play Menu** → ● → **Position to Play** → ● → Specify play start position with → ●

Change Video Playback Speed

[Video Playback] window → → **Play Menu** → ● → **Fast or Slow** → ●
 Press to return to normal speed.

Use a Different Function While Playing Music

[Music Playback] window → → **Switch to BGM** → ● → Activate another function

Open Lyrics

[Music Playback] window → → **Detail Info** → ● → **Lyric** → ●
 Use to toggle between lyrics.

Open Jacket Image

[Music Playback] window → → **Detail Info** → ● → **Jacket Image** → ●
 Use to toggle jacket images.



Advanced Features

Check Operation Methods

[Video Playback] window \Rightarrow $\sqrt{\text{F}}$ \Rightarrow **Help** \Rightarrow ●

Organizing Songs

Set a Song as Ringtone

[Song List] \Rightarrow Select a song \Rightarrow $\sqrt{\text{F}}$ \Rightarrow **Select Ring Tone** \Rightarrow ● (\Rightarrow ● to specify play start position \Rightarrow ●) \Rightarrow Select ringtone item \Rightarrow ●

Search for Songs

[Song List] , [Playlists] window or [Playlist] \Rightarrow $\sqrt{\text{F}}$ \Rightarrow **Search** \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow **Title** \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow Enter condition \Rightarrow ●
 $\sqrt{\text{F}}$ Select a song from search results and press ● to play it.

Change Order of Songs

[Song List] / [Playlist] \Rightarrow $\sqrt{\text{F}}$ \Rightarrow **Sort** \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow Select a criterion \Rightarrow ●

Check Volume of Saved Music

[Song List] \Rightarrow $\sqrt{\text{F}}$ \Rightarrow **Memory Info** \Rightarrow ●

Delete All Music in WMA Folder

$\sqrt{\text{MENU}}$ \Rightarrow **Music** \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow **WMA** \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow $\sqrt{\text{F}}$ \Rightarrow **Delete All** \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow Enter Security Code \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow **YES** \Rightarrow ●

Playlists

Add Songs to Playlist

[Playlist] \Rightarrow $\sqrt{\text{F}}$ \Rightarrow **Edit Playlist** \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow **Add Music** \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow Select a folder \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow Select songs \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow $\sqrt{\text{F}}$ \Rightarrow **YES** \Rightarrow ●
 $\sqrt{\text{F}}$ The songs you selected are added at the end of the playlist.

Change Order of Playlist Songs

[Playlist] \Rightarrow Select a song \Rightarrow $\sqrt{\text{F}}$ \Rightarrow **Edit Playlist** \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow **Sort Playlist** \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow Select a position \Rightarrow ●

Cancel Playlist Songs

[Playlist] \Rightarrow Select a song \Rightarrow $\sqrt{\text{F}}$ \Rightarrow **Edit Playlist** \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow **Release Settings** \Rightarrow ●
● To Select **Release This** \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow **Release This** \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow **YES** \Rightarrow ●
● To Select **Release Selected** \Rightarrow **Release Selected** \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow Select songs \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow $\sqrt{\text{F}}$ \Rightarrow **YES** \Rightarrow ●
● To Select **Release All** \Rightarrow **Release All** \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow Enter Security Code \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow **YES** \Rightarrow ●

Edit a Playlist Name

[Playlists] window \Rightarrow Select a playlist \Rightarrow $\sqrt{\text{F}}$ \Rightarrow **Edit Playlist Name** \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow Edit playlist name \Rightarrow ●

Add All Music in Memory Card to Playlist

[Playlists] window \Rightarrow $\sqrt{\text{F}}$ \Rightarrow **Update All Tracks** \Rightarrow ● \Rightarrow **YES** \Rightarrow ●

Copy a Playlist

[Playlists] window \Rightarrow Select a playlist \Rightarrow $\sqrt{\text{F}}$ \Rightarrow **Copy to Playlist** \Rightarrow ●



Advanced Features

Check Playlist Information

[Playlists] window → Select a playlist →
☐ → **Playlist Info** → ●

Delete Playlists

[Playlists] window → Select a playlist →
☐ → **Delete Playlist** → ●

- To Select *Delete This*
→ **Delete This** → ● → **YES** → ●
- To Select *Delete Selected*
→ **Delete Selected** → ● → Select playlists
→ ● → ☐ → **YES** → ●
- To Select *Delete All*
→ **Delete All** → ● → **YES** → ●

Delete an S! Appli

[S! Appli List] → Select an S! Appli → ☐
→ **Delete** → ● → **YES** → ●

S! Appli

Start Here

[S! Appli List] P. 9-9

Check S! Appli Information

[S! Appli List] → Select an S! Appli → ☐
→ **Properties** → ●

Check Volume of Saved S! Appli

[S! Appli List] → ☐ → **Memory Info** → ●

Entertainment



Mobile Widget	10-2
About Mobile Widget	10-2
Using Mobile Widget (Japanese)	10-2
Downloading Widgets	10-3
Adding Widgets	10-3
S! Quick News	10-5
Using S! Quick News (Japanese)	10-5
S! Info Channel	10-6
Using S! Info Channel (Japanese)	10-6
Books	10-8
Obtaining Books	10-8
Using BookSurfing®	10-8
Advanced Features	10-9
Mobile Widget	10-9
S! Quick News	10-9
S! Info Channel	10-9
Weather Indicators	10-10

10



About Mobile Widget

Download widgets to access the latest information or use various tools.

Access widgets from Standby by pressing .

- Add up to five widgets per Desktop page.
Select from four Desktop pages.
- In addition to preinstalled widgets, download widgets as needed.
- Screenshots are for illustrative purposes and may differ in appearance from actual widgets.

Network Widgets

Some widgets require network connection. Transmission fees incur when using such widgets. Follow onscreen instructions when connecting.

- Packet transmission fees apply for downloading widgets.
- Change to Communication Style or Touch Style to use Mobile Widget.

Tip

- Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information for details on transmission fees.

Using Mobile Widget (Japanese)

1 

Pointer appears.



Active Desktop Page

2 Use pointer to select widget  

Tip

- When *Pointer* (P. 14-26) in *Neuropointer* is set to **OFF**, Neuropointer operation is unavailable. Use Multi Selector to move pointer.

Select Desktop Page

1 [Active Desktop Page]  



A ★ appears next to the selected Desktop page.

2 Select a Desktop page  

Tip

- Swipe left or right (P. 1-12) to toggle Desktop page.



Downloading Widgets

Download and add to Desktop page.

- Store up to 100 widgets.

- 1 **MENU** ⇒ **Entertainment** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Mobile Widget** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Widget Contents** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Download Widget** ⇒ ● ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ●
- 2 Select widgets to download ⇒ ●
(twice)
Installation is complete.
- 3 **Paste on Desktop** ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a Desktop page ⇒ ● ⇒ Move into position ⇒ ●
 - To Activate Immediately
⇒ **Open** ⇒ ●
 - To Check Information
⇒ **Property** ⇒ ●
 - To Open List
⇒ **Widget Contents** ⇒ ●
 - To Return to Previous Window
⇒ **Back** ⇒ ●

Note

- Change to Communication Style to download widgets.

Widget List Icons & Indicators



Widget List

①	Widgets Access Download Widget. Appears when no icon set to widgets. Uninstalled widgets. Select to start installation.
②	Widget Information Preinstalled widgets Downloaded widgets Added to Desktop Page Sendable by mail Infrared transmittable Transferable to Memory Card

Adding Widgets

- 1 **MENU** ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Widget** ⇒ ●
- 2 Select widgets to add ⇒ ⇒ **Paste on Desktop** ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a Desktop page ⇒ ● ⇒ Move into position ⇒ ●

Tip

- Add up to five widgets in each Desktop page.



More Features

Advanced

Mobile Widget

- Change Position of widgets
- Delete from Desktop Page
- Place widgets in Foreground or Background
- Update Display

[▶ P. 10-9](#)

Customize

Mobile Widget

- Check Auto Synchronize Settings
- Set Whether to Automatically Transmit When Abroad
- Delete All Widgets from Desktop Page
- Set Whether to Use Cookies
- Delete Cookies
- Set Whether to Use Mobile Widget

[▶ P. 14-24](#)



Using S! Quick News (Japanese)

Registered news can be updated automatically and checked from Standby.

- Packet transmission fees are incurred for using S! Quick News.

Registering News

<Example> Register news on S! Quick News List

- 1 Press and hold



S! Quick News List

- 2 Add News YES

- 3 Select an item

Follow onscreen instructions.

Checking Updated Information

- 1 [S! Quick News List] Select an item

- 2 Select information

To check next updated information, press .

More Features

Advanced

S! Quick News

- Manually Update List
- View Descriptions of Registered News
- Delete Registered News/Items

P. 10-9)

Customize

S! Quick News

- Set Automatic Updates for S! Quick News
- Hide S! Quick News in Standby
- Set Ticker Speed
- Set Information to appear in S! Quick News
- Hide S! Quick News Images
- Reset S! Quick News Registered Contents

P. 14-24)



Using S! Info Channel (Japanese)

This information service automatically receives the latest news, weather and other information.

- Packet transmission fees are incurred for using S! Info Channel/Weather Indicators.

Subscribing for Service

Subscribe by registering to receive service.

- 1 ⇒ **Entertainment** ⇒ ⇒ **S! Info Ch./Weather** ⇒



S! Info Channel Menu

- 2 **Register/Cancel** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒
- Follow onscreen instructions.

Checking Latest Information

A Desktop Icon notifies you when new information is received.

- 1 ⇒ **Desktop Icons** ⇒



Web Page

Follow onscreen instructions.

Tip

- To check from a menu:
[S! Info Channel Menu] ⇒ **What's New** ⇒
- To check previous information:
[S! Info Channel Menu] ⇒ **History** ⇒ ⇒
Select a date ⇒ ⇒ Unread or read
backnumbers are indicated with or .

Weather Indicators

After subscribing, weather indicators showing current weather appear in Standby.

Weather Indicators

	Clear (Daytime)		Later
	Clear (Night)		Partial
	Cloudy		Pollen (Low)
	Rain		Pollen (High)
	Snow		UV Rays (Low)
	Thunder		UV Rays (High)

<Example> **Cloudy, partial rain**

- For a complete list of indicators, see Appendix (P. 15-19).

Checking Weather Report

- 1 [S! Info Channel Menu] ⇒ **Weather Indicator** ⇒ ⇒ **Weather** ⇒



More Features

Advanced

S! Info Channel

- Receive Previous Unreceivable Information
- Store Images/Melodies from Web Pages
- Add Phone Numbers/Mail Addresses from Web Pages

 **P. 10-9)**

Weather Indicators

- Manually Update Weather Information

 **P. 10-10)**

Customize

S! Info Channel

- Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information
- Set Font Size for Web Pages

 **P. 14-25)**

Weather Indicators

- Set Whether to Automatically Update Weather Information
- Set Whether to Display Weather Indicators in Standby
- Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information

 **P. 14-25)**



Download e-comics, e-photo albums and other CCF file books.

Obtaining Books

Download books from the Internet.

- Downloaded books are stored in Books in Data Folder.
- Some books require you to obtain a contents key (right to use contents).

- 1  ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒  ⇒ **Books** ⇒  ⇒ **Download Books** ⇒  ⇒ **YES** ⇒ 

Follow onscreen instructions.

Tip

- Downloads from BookSurfing® are also available.

Using BookSurfing®

View e-comics, e-photo albums, etc. (CCF file).

- 1  ⇒ **Entertainment** ⇒  ⇒ **BookSurfing** ⇒ 

BookSurfing® is activated.

See the Help for BookSurfing® for operation.

Tip

- Alternatively, activate BookSurfing® by selecting **BookSurfing** from the S! Appli list.



Mobile Widget

Start Here

[Active Desktop Page] P. 10-2

Change Position of widgets

[Active Desktop Page] → Point to target widgets → → **Change Layout** → → Move into position →

Delete from Desktop Page

[Active Desktop Page] → Point to target widgets → → **Delete Content** → → YES →

Place widgets in Foreground or Background

[Active Desktop Page] → Point to target widgets → → **To front** or **To back** →

Update Display

[Active Desktop Page] → Point to target widgets → → **Renew Display** →

S! Quick News

Start Here

[S! Quick News List] P. 10-5

Manually Update List

[S! Quick News List] → Select an item → → **Refresh This** or **Refresh All** → → YES →

View Descriptions of Registered News

[S! Quick News List] → Select an item → → **Outline** →

Delete Registered News/Items

[S! Quick News List] → Select an item → →

- To Select **Delete This** → **Delete This** → → YES →
- To Select **Delete All** → **Delete All** → → YES → (twice) → Enter Security Code → (twice)

S! Info Channel

Start Here

[S! Info Channel Menu] P. 10-6
[Web Page] P. 10-6

Receive Previous Unreceivable Information

[S! Info Channel Menu] → **Get Latest Contents** → → YES →

Store Images/Melodies from Web Pages

[Web Page] → → **Save File** → → (→ Select a file → → **Save** → → YES → (→ Select a folder → (→ YES or NO →))
 Select **Play** and press to play melody file.
 Select **Property** and press to check file information.



Add Phone Numbers/Mail Addresses from Web Pages

[Web Page] → → **Add to Phone Book**
→ → **YES** →

- To Save to Handset
→ **Phone** → → Select store method →
 (→ Search Phone Book → Select Phone Book → (twice)) → Edit items → (→ YES or NO → (→ Enter entry number →))
- To Save to USIM Card
→ **USIM** → → Select store method →
 (→ Search Phone Book → Select Phone Book → (twice)) → Edit items → (→ YES →))

Weather Indicators

Start Here

[S! Info Channel Menu]P. 10-6

Manually Update Weather Information

[S! Info Channel Menu] → **Weather Indicator** → → **Manual Update** → → YES →

Tools



Osaifu-Keitai®	11-2	Voice Memo	11-15
About Osaifu-Keitai®	11-2	Recording Your Voice	11-15
Using Osaifu-Keitai®	11-3	Calculator	11-16
Activating IC Card Lock	11-3	Alarm	11-17
S! GPS Navi	11-5	Setting Alarm	11-17
About S! GPS Navi	11-5	Canceling Alarm	11-18
Activating a Navi Appli	11-5	Bar Code Reader	11-19
Checking Current Location	11-5	Scanning Bar Codes	11-19
Using Location Navi (Japanese)	11-6	Checking Scanned Data	11-19
Life History Viewer	11-7	Text Reader	11-21
Life History Viewer Window	11-7	Scanning Text	11-22
Viewing Data in Chronological Order	11-8	Checking Scanned Text	11-22
Schedule	11-9	Advanced Features	11-24
Schedule Window	11-9	Osaifu-Keitai®	11-24
Saving Events to Schedule	11-9	S! GPS Navi	11-24
Checking Saved Events	11-10	Life History Viewer	11-24
Deleting Events	11-11	Schedule	11-25
To Do List	11-12	To Do List	11-25
Saving Tasks	11-12	Text Memo	11-26
Checking Saved Tasks	11-12	Alarm	11-26
Deleting Tasks	11-13	Bar Code Reader & Text Reader	11-27
Text Memo	11-14		
Saving Text Memos	11-14		
Deleting Text Memos	11-14		



About Osaifu-Keitai®

“Osaifu-Keitai®” is a range of IC Card-based services used by Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handsets. Make purchases using e-money or e-ticketing. Hold handset up to a reader/writer to pay for your purchase.

Osaifu-Keitai® Terms

Osaifu-Keitai®	Cellular phone equipped with “FeliCa” contactless IC card technology for reading and writing data by holding phone up to a reader/writer.
IC Card	An IC chip embedded in Osaifu-Keitai®-compatible handsets.
Lifestyle-Appli	S! Applications to use Osaifu-Keitai®. Some applications are preinstalled.

Tip

- Data saved in IC Card varies by service content and usage history. Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli. Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.
- Softbank is not liable for damage from accidental loss or alteration of IC Card data or settings.
- IC Card data can be misused if your Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handset is lost or stolen. Softbank is not liable for any resulting damages.

Getting Started

Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

Download Lifestyle-Appli via Internet website.
 · Lifestyle-Appli is saved to Data Folder.

Registrations/Settings

Activate Lifestyle-Appli to complete registration or customize settings.
 · Make deposit into account, check payment records or balance, etc.

Note

- Keep a copy of service passwords, customer service contact, etc. in a separate place.

Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

- 1 **MENU** ⇨ **Tools** ⇨ ● ⇨
Osaifu-Keitai ⇨ ● ⇨
Lifestyle-Appli ⇨ ● ⇨
Download LifeApp ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES**
 ⇨ ●

- 2 **Select a Lifestyle-Appli** ⇨ ●
(twice)▶

- ▶ **To Activate Lifestyle-Appli Right Away**
YES ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a Lifestyle-Appli
 ⇨ ●
- ▶ **To Activate Lifestyle-Appli Later**
NO ⇨ ●

Note

- Check the battery level before downloading Lifestyle-Appli. If the battery level is low, download may fail.
- If you replace USIM Card due to damage or loss, downloaded Lifestyle-Appli are no longer available.



Activating Lifestyle-Appli

- 1 **MENU** ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Osaifu-Keitai** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Lifestyle-Appli** ⇒ ●



Lifestyle-Appli List

- 2 Select a Lifestyle-Appli ⇒ ●

Note

- Keep a copy of service passwords, customer service contact, etc. in a separate place.

Tip

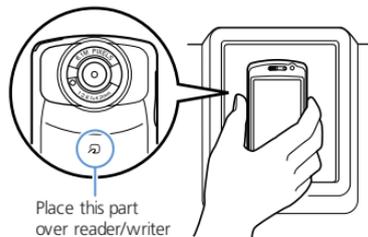
- Lifestyle-Appli is paused when a call arrives. When the call ends, a prompt with **Pause**, **Resume**, and **End** appears. Select **Resume** to resume the Lifestyle-Appli.
- To end Lifestyle-Appli: While running, **End** ⇒ ●

Using Osaifu-Keitai®

Reader/Writer Transactions

- There is no need to activate a Lifestyle-Appli during transaction.
- Make sure battery is adequately charged.
- Transactions are possible even when handset power is off or during calls or Internet transmissions.

- 1 Hold **Keitai** logo up to a reader/writer ⇒ Check scan result on reader/writer display



Place this part over reader/writer

Hold handset parallel to the reader/writer. Try moving handset around if recognition is slow.

Note

- Softbank is not liable for damages from accidental loss or alteration of IC Card data or settings.

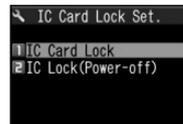
Tip

- Data may be unreadable if a metal object, etc. is between **Keitai** logo and reader/writer.

Activating IC Card Lock

Use this function to restrict access to and prevent unauthorized use of Osaifu-Keitai®.

- 1 **MENU** ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Osaifu-Keitai** ⇒ ● ⇒ **IC Card Lock Set.** ⇒ ●
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒ ●



IC Card Lock Setting Window

- 3 **IC Card Lock** ⇒ ● ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ●
● appears in Standby.

Setting Operation of IC Card Lock after Power Off

- 1 [IC Card Lock Setting] window ⇒ **IC Lock (Power-off)** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Maintain** or **IC Card Lock ON** ⇒ ●



Tip

- Alternatively, to set IC Card Lock:
In Standby, press and hold **[3]**
- To cancel IC Card Lock:
In Standby, press and hold **[3]** → Enter Security Code → ●

Remote Lock

Call from a specified phone to activate Call Remote Lock.

Saving Numbers to Activate Call Remote Lock

1 **MEMO** → **Tools** → ● →
Osaifu-Keitai → ● → **Call Remote Lock** → ●

2 Enter Security Code → ●

3 **ON** → ●



Call Remote Lock Setting Window

4 <Not Recorded> ▶

- ▶ **To Enter and Save Numbers**
● → Enter phone numbers → ●
- ▶ **To save numbers from Phone Book, Redial or Received calls**
☞ → **Look-up Address** → ● →
Phone Book, Redial or Received Calls
→ ● (→ Search Phone Book → ●)
→ Select a number → ●
- ▶ **To save a Payphone number**
☞ → **Payphone** → ●

5



Tip

- To cancel Call Remote Lock:
At Step 3, select **OFF** → ●

Activating Call Remote Lock

1 Using one of the specified phones, call handset

Send Caller ID.

2 Hang up after handset receives the call

3 Within three minutes, repeat **1 - 2** twice

After the third Missed Call, IC Card Lock is set; a message announces IC Card Lock activation.

Note

- If series is interrupted by another call, Missed Call count is reset. Start over from the beginning.

More Features

Advanced

Osaifu-Keitai®

- Check Lifestyle-Appli Properties
- Check Memory Status
- Delete a Lifestyle-Appli
- Edit Call Remote Lock Numbers
- Delete Call Remote Lock Numbers

▶ P. 11-24

Customize

Osaifu-Keitai®

- Set Illumination for IC Card
- Delete all Lifestyle-Appli
- Set Whether to Enable Opening from Reader/Writer

▶ P. 14-28



About S! GPS Navi

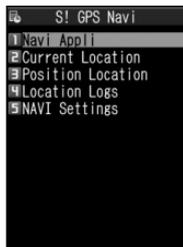
Use this GPS feature to find your location and routes to destinations.

Note

- Positioning accuracy may be affected by GPS satellite/radio station signal strength.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for damages resulting from provided location information.
- S! GPS Navi applications may require subscription.
- Transmission fees apply, even when positioning fails.
- May incur high transmission fees.

Activating a Navi Appli

- 1 MENU ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ● ⇒ **S! GPS Navi** ⇒ ●



S! GPS Navi Window

- 2 **Navi Appli** ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an application ⇒ ●

Tip

- To activate Navi appli from positioning for current location:
[S! GPS Navi] window ⇒ **Position Location** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Navi Appli** ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an application ⇒ ●

Checking Current Location

Confirm your location by map.

- 1 [S! GPS Navi] window ⇒ **Current Location** ⇒ ●

A confirmation appears. Select **Send** to allow location to be sent.

To disable confirmation, select **No Confirmation**.

- 2 **Send** ⇒ ●

Note

- This function is unavailable when **Send Location Info** is set to **Not Send**; change setting to **Confirm** or **Send**.

Tip

- Alternatively, to check current location:
[S! GPS Navi] window ⇒ **Position Location** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Read Map** ⇒ ●



Using Location Navi (Japanese)

Search for someone's location. Also determine approximate location of lost handset.

- Separate subscription required.

1 [S! GPS Navi] window → **NAVI Settings** → ● → **Location Navi** → ● → **Service Settings** → ●

Follow onscreen instructions.

More Features

Advanced

S! GPS Navi

- Add Current Location to Phone Book
- Check Location Logs
- Use Location Logs
- Delete Location Log Records

▶ P. 11-24)

Customize

S! GPS Navi

- Set Default Navi Appli
- Begin Positioning Before/After Activating Map
- Save Map URL
- Edit URL Name
- Delete Map URL
- Set Map URL
- Set Location Information Send Method

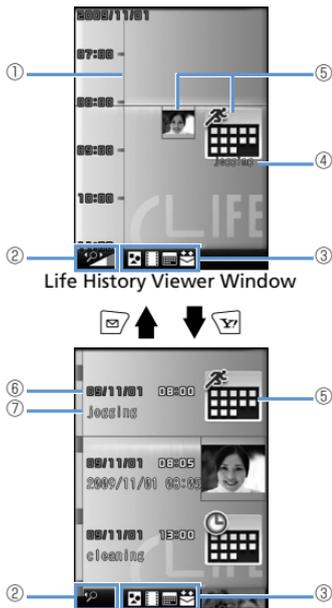
▶ P. 14-28)



Life History Viewer

View activities in chronological order.

Life History Viewer Window



①	Time Axis
②	Time Axis Zoom Reduce/enlarge between 1-minute and 1-month increments
③	Data Type Still image, Image data Video Schedule Received Sent Received & sent messages
④	Data properties Still image, image, Movie: No image Schedule: Schedule name Mail message (send/receive) history: The sender for the received mail, and the receiver for the sent mail
⑤	Icon Still image, image: Image thumbnail Movie: Schedule: or other icons Mail message (send/receive) history: , or other icons

⑥	Date and time Still image, image, movie: Shooting, Updating or Saving date and time Schedule: Start date and time Mail message (send/receive) history: Received/Sent date and time
⑦	Title Still image, image, movie: Title Schedule: Schedule name Mail message (send/receive) history: • Sender for received mail • Receiver for sent mail

Tip

- Still images and images in JPEG format can be browsed.



Viewing Data in Chronological Order

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Life History Viewer** ⇒



Life History Viewer Window

To reduce/enlarge scale of time axis, press or .

- 2 Select a data item ⇒



Life History Viewer Closeup Window

- 3

The function corresponding to the data type is activated and the data is opened.

More Features

Advanced

Life History Viewer

- Hide Some Items in Life History Viewer
- Update Life History Viewer

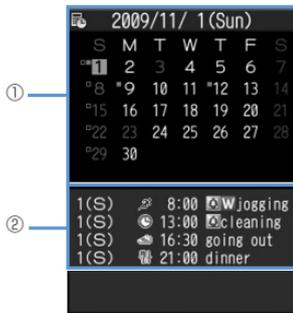
P. 11-24



Schedule

Save future events to Schedule. Set alarm to be activated at a specified time with message and animation appearing to remind you of the event. Saved events can be checked from Schedule window.

Schedule Window



Schedule Window

① **Calendar**
 Blue date: Saturdays
 Red date: Sundays, public and other holidays
 ___ Today
 Events for the morning
 Events for the afternoon

② **Information Panel**
 Date, day of the week, content type icon, time and saved content

- Content Type Icon
 (or a user icon) Event
 Holiday
- Event Repetition Icon
 Daily event
 Weekly event
 Monthly event
 Annual event
 Event for over a day

Saving Events to Schedule

- 1 MENU → Tools → [Home Icon] → Schedule → [Home Icon]
- 2 [Envelope Icon] → Schedule → [Home Icon]



Event Edit Window

- 3 [List Icon] → [Home Icon] → Enter subject → [Home Icon] → Select an icon → [Home Icon]
- 4 [Clock Icon] → [Home Icon] → Enter start/end date and time → [Home Icon]
- 5 [Repeat Icon] → [Home Icon] → 1 Time, Daily (D), Weekly (W), Monthly (M) or Annually (Y) → [Home Icon] → Put checkmarks to days of the week → [Envelope Icon]



Schedule

6 → → Select an alarm notification option → (→ Enter time)

7 → → Select an alarm tone type → (→ Select a folder → → Select an alarm tone →)

Folders are unavailable when *Clock Alarm Tone, Voice Announce* or *OFF* is selected.

8 → → Enter place →

9 → → Enter details → →



Entered content appears when alarm sounds or vibrates.

Alarm Notification

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears (on Display) for approximately five minutes.

When handset is closed, press to stop alarm.

When handset is open, press any key to stop alarm. Press any key again to end notification message.

Tip

- If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while alarm is sounding, alarm stops.

Adding Holidays

1 [Schedule] window → → *Holiday* →

2 → → Enter year, month and date →

3 → → **1 Time or Annually (Y)** →

4 → → Enter content →

5

Setting Secret Entries

Set private events as secret entries.

- Activate Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode beforehand. (P. 4-7)
- Events set as secret entries are viewable only in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode. (P. 4-7)

1 [Event Edit] window → Enter items →

Tip

- To cancel secret setting in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode:
[Event List]/[Event Details] → → Release Secret → → YES →

Checking Saved Events

1 → *Tools* → → *Schedule* →



Schedule Window

Press to toggle between weekly and monthly view.

2 → Select a date with events →



Event List



Schedule

3 Select an event → ●



Event Details

Deleting Events

To Delete One Event

1 In [Event List], select an event or [Event Details] →

2 **Delete** → ● → **Delete This** → ●
→ **YES** → ●

To Delete Multiple Events

1 In [Schedule] window, select date, [Event List] or [Event Details] →

2 **Delete** → ● → **Delete selected** → ●

3 Select an event → ●

Repeat this step to specify other events.

4 → **YES** → ●

To Delete All Events Prior to a Specified Date

1 In [Schedule] window, select date, [Event List] or [Event Details] →

2 **Delete** → ● → **Delete Past** → ●
→ **Select an item** → ● → **YES** → ●

More Features

Advanced

Schedule

- Sort Events by Icon
- Check Number of Saved Events
- Edit an Event
- Copy an Event
- Delete All Events
- Reset Holidays
- Search Information by Keyword

▶ P. 11-25

Customize

Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

▶ P. 14-2



To Do List

Save tasks to To Do List. Set Alarm to remind you of deadlines.

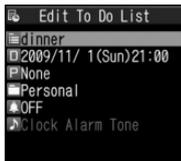
Saving Tasks

1 → **Tools** → → **To Do List** →

2 → **New** →

■ **To Edit a Saved Task**

→ Select a task → → **Edit** →



Task Edit Window

3 → → **Enter task** →

Task appears when alarm time arrives.

4 →

▶ **To Enter Date Manually**

Enter Date → → Enter due date and time →

▶ **To Enter Due Date from Calendar**

Choose Date → → Select a date on Calendar → → Enter date/time →

▶ **To Cancel a Due Date**

No Date →

5 → → **Select a priority level** →

6 → → **Select a category** →

7 → → **Select an alarm notification option** → (→ Enter time)

8 → → **Select an alarm tone type** → (→ **Select a folder** → → **Select an alarm tone** →)

Folders are unavailable when **Clock Alarm Tone**, **Voice Announce** or **OFF** is selected.

Alarm Notification

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears (on Display) for approximately five minutes.

When handset is closed, press to stop alarm.

When handset is open, press any key to stop alarm. Press any key again to end notification message.

Tip

- If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while alarm is sounding, alarm stops.

Checking Saved Tasks

1 → **Tools** → → **To Do List** →



Task List

2 **Select a task** →



Task Details



Tip

- Overdue tasks are indicated by red status icons (e.g.).

Deleting Tasks

To Delete One Task

- 1 In [Task List], select a task or [Task Details]
- 2 **Delete** **Delete This**
YES

P. 11-25)

To Delete Multiple Tasks

- 1 [Task List]
- 2 **Delete** **Delete selected**
- 3 Select a task
Repeat this step to specify other tasks.

- 4 **YES**

To Delete All Completed Tasks

- 1 [Task List]
- 2 **Delete** **Delete Completed** **YES**

More Features

Advanced

To Do List

- Sort Tasks by Category
- Change Order of Tasks
- Set Task Status
- Delete All Tasks

P. 11-25)

Customize

Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

P. 14-2)



Text Memo

Save short notes or messages as text memos.

- Saved text memos can be inserted in Schedule or in messages.

Saving Text Memos

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Text Memo** ⇒



Text Memo List

- 2 **<Not Recorded>** ⇒ ⇒ Enter content ⇒

■ To Edit a Saved Text Memo

- ⇒ Select a text memo ⇒ ⇒ Edit content ⇒

Deleting Text Memos

To Delete One Text Memo

- 1 [Text Memo List] ⇒ Select a text memo ⇒
- 2 **Delete** ⇒ ⇒ **Delete This** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

To Delete Multiple Text Memos

- 1 [Text Memo List] ⇒
- 2 **Delete** ⇒ ⇒ **Delete selected** ⇒
- 3 Select a text memo ⇒
Repeat this step to specify other text memos.
- 4 ⇒ **YES** ⇒

More Features

Advanced

Text Memo

- Save a Text Memo to Schedule
- Sort Text Memos by Category
- Check Text Memo Information
- Delete All Text Memos

▶ P. 11-26



Voice Memo

Record voice for up to 20 seconds. Handset makes single recording and overwrites each time.

- See P. 3-6 and P. 3-20 for playing and deleting a recorded voice memo.

Recording Your Voice

1  ⇨ **Tools** ⇨  ⇨ **Voice Memo**
⇨ 

2 **YES** ⇨  ⇨ **Record your voice**
Speak into microphone after short beep sounds through earpiece.
When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound. To stop recording, press .

Tip

- Recording stops automatically when a call arrives, alarm goes off or another function is activated.
- See P. 3-5 for details on recording the other party's voice.



Calculator

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Calculator** ⇒

2 Enter numbers with Keypad ⇒
Enter +, -, × or ÷ with Multi Selector

■ To Calculate Negative Numbers

⇒ ⇒ Enter numbers with keypad ⇒
Enter +, -, × or ÷ with Multi Selector

3
Result appears.

Tip

- If the calculation result exceeds 10 digits, *.E* appears.

Operations

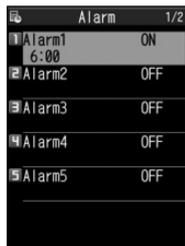
Enter Number	
+ (Add)	
- (Subtract)	
× (Multiply)	
÷ (Divide)	
= (Equal)	
Decimal Point	
Cancel Calculation	
Clear Number	



Alarm

Setting Alarm

- 1 → **Tools** → → **Alarm** →



Alarm List

- 2 Select an alarm →



Alarm Setting Window

- 3 → → **Enter title** →

Title appear in Alarm message.

- 4 → → **Enter time** →

- 5 → → **1 Time, Daily** () or **Select Day** () → (→ Put checkmarks to days of the week →)

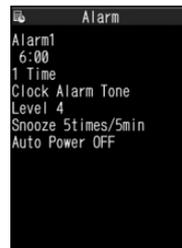
- 6 → → **Select an alarm tone type** → (→ **Select a folder** →) → **Select an alarm tone** →
- Folders are unavailable when **Clock Alarm Tone**, **Voice Announce** or **OFF** is selected.

- 7 → → to adjust volume →

- 8 → →
- ▶ **To Set Snooze**
ON → → Enter number of activation times → Enter time interval
 - ▶ **To Cancel Snooze**
OFF → → Enter ringing duration

- 9 → → **ON or OFF** → →

- **To View Alarm Entries**
→ Select an entry →



Alarm Details

Alarm Operations

When the set time arrives, alarm activates and animation appears (on Display). When Auto Power is set to ON (Alarm Setting window), handset automatically turns on for alarm. Press **[MUTE]** to stop alarm tone with handset closed. Press any key to stop alarm tone with handset open.

When Snooze is set to **OFF**, press any key again to cancel alarm and return to previous window. When Snooze is set to **ON**, alarm tone repeats at the set interval. Press **[MUTE]** to cancel Snooze.



Note

- When **Keypad sound** is set to **ON**, two short beeps sound if you:
 - Press a key, after canceling alarm (Snooze not set).
 - Press  while snooze is still set.
- Set the auto power-on function to **OFF** in Alarm Setting window and turn off handset, when you are near high-precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals, on an aircraft or in a hospital where handset use is prohibited.
- If a call arrives while alarm is sounding, alarm stops.
- If the alarm activation time comes during a call, alarm sounds from Earpiece. Snooze does not work even if it is set to **ON**.

More Features

Advanced

Alarm

- Cancel All Alarms
- Edit Alarm Settings

 P. 11-26

Customize

Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

 P. 14-2

Canceling Alarm

- 1 [Alarm List] ⇔ Select an alarm ⇔



Each time you press , alarm toggles between ON and OFF.

Tip

- Alarm settings are retained even if alarm is canceled.



Bar Code Reader

JAN codes and QR codes can be scanned by Bar Code Reader using handset camera.

About JAN & QR Codes

JAN Code

A bar code made of vertical lines (bars) with different widths and spaces in between, representing numbers. Handset can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) bar codes.

QR Code

A two-dimensional code representing alphanumeric, kanji, kana or pictographs. Some QR codes are made up of several data areas that are scanned as individual QR codes and then automatically combined as one QR code.

Scanning Bar Codes

● Position handset camera at a distance of 10 cm from the bar code.

1 → **Tools** → → **Bar Code Reader** →

2 Frame the bar code in the scan viewfinder



Bar Code Scanning Window

Scanning starts automatically.

, , and indicate the corners of the scan viewfinder.

Press to toggle zoom.

■ To Cancel Scanning

→ → **OK** →

■ To Scan a QR Code Made of Several Data Areas (QR Codes)

→ **OK** → (twice) → Scan a QR code
Repeat this step to scan other QR codes. All component QR codes must be scanned in order to access or save scanned data on handset.

■ To Turn On Light

→

Press again to turn off.

3 Check scanned data

■ To Discard Scanned Data

→ → **YES** →

4 → **Store** → → **YES** → →

OK →

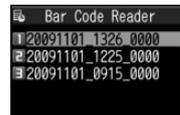
Tip

- A JAN code/QR code must be accurately focused and be enlarged to fill the scan viewfinder.
- Scanning may take a while.
- Some bar codes may not be scanned depending on the size, version or print quality, or due to scratches, stains, damage or the reflection of light.

Checking Scanned Data

1 [Bar Code Scanning] window →

→ **Reading Data List** →



Scanned Bar Code Data List



2 Select an entry ⇌ ●



Scanned Bar Code Data Details

Tip

- Characters that are not supported by Bar Code Reader are replaced with spaces (blanks).

More Features

Advanced

Using Scanned Data

- Make a Call
- Compose a Message
- Access the Internet
- Save to Phone Book
- Save a Bookmark
- Copy Text
- Edit Title of Scanned Data
- Delete Scanned Data

▶ P. 11-27)



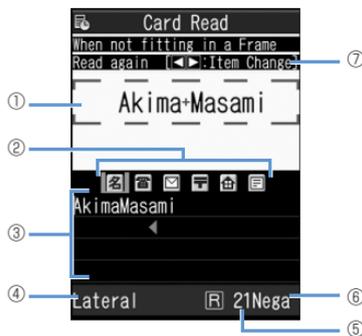
Text Reader

Use Text Reader to scan printed text.

Scan Modes

Card read	Scan name, phone number, e-mail address, postal code, address and memo printed on business cards, and save all scanned data collectively as a Phone Book entry.
Compose message	Scan address, subject or message text, and open Composition (S! Mail) window with the address, subject or message text entered.
URL	Scan URL, and access the page or save the URL to Bookmark.
Mail address	Scan e-mail address, and compose an S! Mail to the address.
Phone number	Scan phone number, and make a call to the number.
Free memo	Scan Japanese or English text, and save the text to Text Memo.

Text Scanning Window



Text Scanning Window

①	Scan Viewfinder
②	Category Icons <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Name Phone number E-mail address Postal code Address Memo Address Subject Message text
③	Scanned Text
④	Scan Mode
⑤	Remaining Number of Characters That Can be Scanned
⑥	Negative Mode <i>Nega</i> appears when <i>NEGA/POSI Mode</i> is set to <i>Negative Fix</i> .
⑦	Key Guidance



Scanning Text

- Position handset camera at a distance of 10 cm from the text.

<Example> Scanning in *Card Read* mode

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Text Reader**
⇒

2 **New** ⇒ ⇒ **Card Read** ⇒



Text Scanning Window

3 ⇒ **Select a category icon** ⇒ **Frame text in the scan viewfinder**
Press to toggle zoom in and zoom out.

4
The text is scanned.
The scanned text appears.

■ **To Rescan the Same Text**
⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

■ **When Scanned Text Overflows Scanned Text Field**

⇒ to scroll the field

■ **To Scan Following Text**

⇒ ⇒ **Frame text in the scan viewfinder** (include several scanned characters of the preceding text) ⇒

■ **To Scan Another Item**

⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **Select a category icon** ⇒ **Frame text in the scan viewfinder** ⇒

■ **To Turn On Light**

⇒
Press again to turn off.

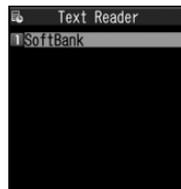
5

Tip

- Text must be accurately focused and be enlarged to fill the scan viewfinder.
- When *Processing* ... appears, do not move handset.
- Handwritten text is not recognized.
- Text may not be recognized correctly when:
 - Faxed or copied text is scanned.
 - Decorated characters are scanned.
 - Spaces between characters are uneven.
 - Text is indistinguishable from the background.
 - Ambient lighting is inappropriate.

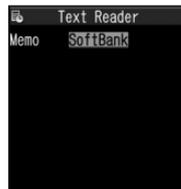
Checking Scanned Text

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Text Reader**
⇒ ⇒ **Reading Data List** ⇒



Scanned Text List

2 **Select an entry** ⇒



Scanned Text Details



More Features

Advanced

Scanning Text

- Correct Scanned Text
- Edit Scanned Text
- Set Printing Status of Text
- Set Guidance ON/OFF
- Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

▶ P. 11-27)

Using Scanned Data

- Make a Call
- Compose a Message
- Access the Internet
- Save to Phone Book
- Save a Bookmark
- Search Phone Book
- Save a Text Memo
- Copy Text
- Delete Scanned Data

▶ P. 11-27)



Osaifu-Keitai®

Start Here

[Lifestyle-Appli List]P. 11-3

[Call Remote Lock Setting] window... P. 11-4

Check Lifestyle-Appli Properties

[Lifestyle-Appli List] ⇨ Select a Lifestyle-Appli ⇨ ⇨ **Properties** ⇨ ●

Check Memory Status

[Lifestyle-Appli List] ⇨ ⇨ **Memory Info** ⇨ ●

Delete a Lifestyle-Appli

[Lifestyle-Appli List] ⇨ Select a Lifestyle-Appli ⇨ ⇨ **Delete** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Edit Call Remote Lock Numbers

[Call Remote Lock Setting] window ⇨ Select phone number ⇨ ● ⇨ Change phone number ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ● ⇨

Delete Call Remote Lock Numbers

[Call Remote Lock Setting] window ⇨ Select phone number ⇨ ⇨ **Delete this** or **Delete All** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

S! GPS Navi

Start Here

[S! GPS Navi] windowP. 11-5

Add Current Location to Phone Book

[S! GPS Navi] window ⇨ **Position Location** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Add to Phonebook** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Phone** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select add method ⇨ ● (⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select Phone Book ⇨ ● (twice)) ⇨ Edit items ⇨ (⇨ **YES** or **NO** ⇨ ●) (⇨ Enter entry number ⇨ ●)

Check Location Logs

[S! GPS Navi] window ⇨ **Location Logs** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a record ⇨ ●

Use Location Logs

[S! GPS Navi] window ⇨ **Location Logs** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a location log ⇨ ⇨ **Read Map browser, Read Map S! Appli, Go To, or Add to Phone Book** ⇨ ● ⇨ Follow onscreen instructions

Delete Location Log Records

[S! GPS Navi] window ⇨ **Location Logs** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a location log ⇨ ⇨ **Delete** ⇨ ●

- To Select **Delete This** ⇨ **Delete This** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●
- To **Delete selected** ⇨ **Delete selected** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select logs ⇨ ● ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●
- To **Delete All** ⇨ **Delete All** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Life History Viewer

Start Here

[Life History Viewer] window P. 11-8

[Life History Viewer Closeup] window P. 11-8

Hide Some Items in Life History Viewer

[Life History Viewer] window / [Life History Viewer Closeup] window ⇨ ⇨ **Display setting** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a data item ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ● ⇨

Only checked items appear in Life History Viewer window.



Advanced Features

Update Life History Viewer

[Life History Viewer] window / [Life History Viewer Closeup] window ⇨ ⇨ **Reload** ⇨ ●

Schedule

Start Here

[Schedule] window P. 11-9
[Event Edit] window P. 11-9
[Event List] P. 11-10
[Event Details] P. 11-11

Sort Events by Icon

[Schedule] window, [Event List] or [Event Details] ⇨ ⇨ **Icon Display** ⇨ ● ⇨
Select an icon ⇨ ●

Check Number of Saved Events

[Schedule] window ⇨ ⇨ **No. of Schedules** ⇨ ●

Edit an Event

[Event List] / [Event Details] (⇨ Select an event) ⇨ ⇨ Edit each item ⇨

Copy an Event

[Event List] / [Event Details] ⇨ ⇨ **Copy** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter start/end date and time ⇨ ● ⇨ Edit each item ⇨
 Repetition setting of an event is canceled when it is copied.

Delete All Events

[Schedule] window, [Event List] or [Event Details] ⇨ ⇨ **Delete** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Delete All** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨
Select an item ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Reset Holidays

[Schedule] window ⇨ ⇨ **Reset Holiday** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Search Information by Keyword

[Event Details] ⇨ ⇨ **Quick Search** ⇨ ●
● To Enter a Keyword
⇨ **Enter Keyword** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter keyword ⇨ ● ⇨ or ⇨ ● ⇨
Select an item from search results ⇨ ●
● To Enter a Keyword with Quote Keyword
⇨ **Quote Keyword** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Subject, Details or Place** ⇨ ● ⇨ Move cursor to head of keyword to search ⇨ ● ⇨ Move cursor to last character of keyword to search ⇨ ● ⇨ or ⇨ ● ⇨
Select item from results ⇨ ●
● To Select a Keyword from Previous Searches
⇨ **History** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select keyword ⇨ ● ⇨ or ⇨ Select item from results ⇨ ●

To Do List

Start Here

[Task List] P. 11-12
[Task Details] P. 11-12

Sort Tasks by Category

[Task List] ⇨ ⇨ **Category Display** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a category ⇨ ●



Bar Code Reader & Text Reader

Start Here

- [Scanned Bar Code Data List] P. 11-19
- [Scanned Bar Code Data Details] P. 11-20
- [Text Scanning] window P. 11-22
- [Scanned Text List] P. 11-22
- [Scanned Text Details] P. 11-22

Scanning Text

Correct Scanned Text

[Text Scanning] window → Scan text → to move cursor to the character you want to correct → Press the number key corresponding to the correct character on the suggestion list

Press to toggle upper case and lower case.

Edit Scanned Text

[Text Scanning] window → Scan text → → **Edit** → → Edit text using keypad

To cancel editing and return to scanned text, press , select **Select Recog. Data** and then press .

Set Printing Status of Text

[Text Scanning] window → → **NEGA/POSI Mode** → → **Auto setting**, **Positive Fix** or **Negative Fix** →

Set to **Positive Fix** when dark-colored text is printed on a light-colored background.

Set to **Negative Fix** when light-colored text is printed on a dark-colored background.

Set Guidance ON/OFF

[Text Scanning] window → → **Guidance OFF** or **Guidance ON** →

Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

[Text Scanning] window → → **Vertical Writing** or **Lateral Writing** →

Using Scanned Data

Make a Call

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] / [Scanned Text Details] → Select a phone number → → **Dialing** → → **Voice Phone** or **Video Call** → → **Dial** → → Talk → to end call

Compose a Message

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] / [Scanned Text Details] → Select an e-mail address → → **Create S! Mail** → → Compose and send S! Mail

Access the Internet

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] / [Scanned Text Details] → Select a URL → → **Internet** → → **YES** →

Save to Phone Book

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] / [Scanned Text Details] → Select an item → → **Add to Phone Book** →

- To Select **Phone**
 - **Phone** → → Select store method → (→ Search Phone Book → Select an entry → (twice) → Edit each item → (→ **YES** or **NO** → (→ Enter entry number →
- To Select **USIM**
 - **USIM** → → Select store method → (→ Search Phone Book → Select an entry → (twice) → Edit each item → (→ **Overwrite** or **Add** → (→ **YES** →



Save a Bookmark

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] / [Scanned Text Details] → Select a URL → → **Add Bookmark** → ● (twice) → Select a folder → ●

Search Phone Book

[Scanned Text Details] → Select an item → → **Search Phone Book** → ● → Search Phone Book

Save a Text Memo

[Scanned Text Details] → Select an item → → **Add to Memo** → ●

Copy Text

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] / [Scanned Text Details] → → **Copy** → ● → Select beginning of characters → ● → Select end of characters → ●

Edit Title of Scanned Data

[Scanned Bar Code Data List] → Select an entry → → **Edit Title** → ● → Edit title → ●

Delete Scanned Data

[Scanned Bar Code Data List] / [Scanned Text List] → Select an entry →

- To Select *Delete This*
 - *Delete This* → ● → YES → ●
- To Select *Delete All*
 - *Delete All* → ● → Enter Security Code
 - ● → YES → ●

Data Management



About Data Folder	12-2	Advanced Features.....	12-17
Accessing Files	12-3	Accessing Files	12-17
Opening Files.....	12-3	Editing Files	12-18
Quick Album (Slideshow).....	12-6	Managing Folders	12-18
Creating Animations	12-7	Managing Files	12-19
Using Playlist (Melodies)	12-8	Memory Card.....	12-19
Using Playlists (Videos).....	12-8		
Editing Files	12-10		
Editing Still Images.....	12-10		
Editing Videos	12-11		
File & Folder Management.....	12-12		
Creating a Folder.....	12-12		
Moving Files to a Different Folder	12-12		
About Memory Card.....	12-13		
Inserting & Removing a Memory Card.....	12-13		
Managing Memory Cards	12-14		
Formatting a Memory Card	12-14		
Accessing Memory Card Data.....	12-14		
Copying Data between Handset & Memory Card.....	12-15		
Configuring Print Settings of Images.....	12-16		

12



About Data Folder

Use Data Folder to manage data on handset. Files are automatically saved to folders by file format.

- Some folders contain links. Use the links to access download sites in Yahoo! Keitai.

Folders & Files in Data Folder

My Picture

Image files (Camera images and downloaded files such as My Pictograms)

Widget

Downloaded widgets files

Books

Downloaded book files

Other Documents¹

Saved document files (Word, Excel, PowerPoint®, Text)

Melody

Melodies and audio files recorded by Voice Announce

Ring Songs-Music

Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full®, downloaded music files and music files transferred from PCs

TV

Recorded programs¹ and captured screenshots²

- 1 Save to memory card only.
- 2 Save to handset only.

S! Appli

Downloaded S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli

Videos

Video files (captured/downloaded video files and Wi-Fi contents)

PDF

Downloaded PDF files and saved PDF files

When Data Folder memory is full or number of files savable is reached, a message asks whether to delete unnecessary data (note, however, this message may not appear depending on the data type). Follow the steps below to delete data:

YES → ● → Select a folder → ● → Select a data item → ● →  → YES → ●

- You may need to select a data type before selecting a folder if the data you want to delete has multiple storage areas.
- You may need to select more than one data item to delete depending on the degree of insufficient memory.

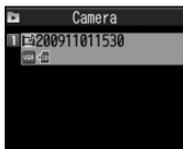


Opening Files

<Example> Open Video File

1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **Videos** ⇒

2 Select a folder ⇒



File List

3 Select a file ⇒



Opened File Window

Opening Files on Memory Card

1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒

2 Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ **microSD** ⇒

3 Select a folder ⇒

4 Select a file ⇒

Indicators in File List

Indicators show file type and available operation.

- QVGA movie
- VGA movie
- Attach to mail
- Insert in Graphic Mail
- Set as wallpaper, etc.
- Set as a ringtone
- Infrared transmission
- Copy/move to memory card
- Edit
- File size over 10 MB
(Viewable only in Memory Card)

Using Picture Files

Open a picture file from My Picture folder.



Picture Window

Operations in Picture Window

Switch Files	
Toggle Normal Screen and Full Screen	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In full screen mode, view vertical images in Portrait View; horizontal images in Landscape View.
Zoom In/Zoom Out*	⇒ or
Show at Actual Size*	⇒
Scroll Large-sized or Zoomed-in Image*	<p>Alternatively, use Neuropointer.</p>

* Press to return to the original size.



In Touch Style



Picture Window (Touch Style)

①	QUIT
②	Delete Delete opened image.
③	Previous Image Open previous image.
④	Next Image Open next image.
⑤	Mail or Blog Attach image files to S! Mail. Upload image files to a blog.
⑥	Full or Normal In full screen mode, view vertical images in Portrait View; horizontal images in Landscape View.

⑦ Zoom
Tap to access following Keys.
 + or - : Tap to zoom in or out by increments.
 Normal : No magnification.
 BACK : Return to original size.

Operations in Picture Window

Previous or Next Image	Swipe to left or right
Scroll Display	Drag in target direction*
Zoom In or Out	Pinch apart or pinch*

* Tap to activate.

Tip

- For details on using Touch Panel, see P. 1-9.

Playing/Using Melody Files

Open a file from Melody folder.



Melody Window

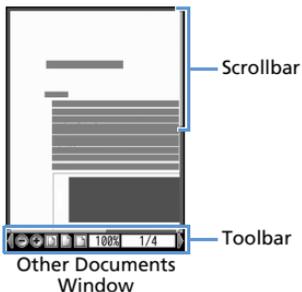
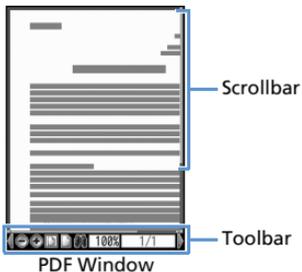
Playback Operations

Switch Files	
Adjust Volume	
	77- OR 100%
Play or Stop	
End	



Using PDF & Other Document Files

Open a file from PDF or Other Documents folder.



Operations in PDF/Document File

Scroll	
Toggle Page and Toolbar Operation	
Zoom Out	
Display Entire Page	
Zoom In	
Display Previous Page	
Display Next Page	
Scroll Page Up	
Scroll Page Down	
Search Text	
Show/Hide Toolbar and Scrollbar	
Help	
Search Next	
Search Previous	

- 1 In Other Documents window, opens previous page.
- 2 In Other Documents window, opens next page.

Toolbar Icons

Use to select icons and to toggle icon view.

	Specify zoom
	Specify page
	Zoom out/zoom in
	Entire page/100% zoom/match width to Display
	First/previous/next/last page
	Search text
	Rotate L/R 90 deg
	Copy text
	Toggle show/hide shrunk page image
	Toggle text wrap and no wrap at Display width
	View operation descriptions for Toolbar and keys
	Single page/continuous/two page view



Tip

- Select files in S! Appli to activate S! Appli. For information about S! Appli, see P. 9-8.
- Select files in Ring Songs-Music or Videos to activate Music Player. For details, see P. 9-3.

Quick Album (Slideshow)

View JPEG images saved in My Picture. Set images to switch automatically or manually.

- Quick Album is also available for JPEG images saved to Memory Cards.

1 → **Data Folder** → → **My Picture** → →



Quick Album Window

Tip

- Alternatively, activate this function from → **Camera** → → **Quick Album** →
- Open folder images in the following order. When opening from **Camera**, images in the folder set with **Select to Save** and in **Camera** open first.
 - ①Inbox
 - ②Camera
 - ③User created folder
 - ④microSD pictures

Playback Operations

During Manual Play

Previous/next image	
Zoom in/out	
Image scroll (zoomed in)	<p> - </p> <p>Scroll in below directions.</p>

Return to original size (zoomed in/out)	
Image switch effect (Slide → Fade → Cube → RGB)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Effect changes with each press. Slide: Slides to right or left. Fade: Fade in/out. Cube: Rotates as cube. RGB: Splits into red, green and blue then rotates.
Detect face and zoom in (Face)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press to toggle when several faces are detected.
Start Photo Slide-show (auto play)	

During Auto Play

Previous/next image	
End Photo Slide-show (auto play)	



Accessing Files

In Touch Style

1 77-

2 **Data Folder** → **Quick Album**



Quick Album Window (Touch Style)

①	Quit
②	Start Photo Slide-show Automatically open saved images in order. Tap Display while viewing to cancel Slideshow.
③	Previous Image Open previous image.
④	Next Image Open next image.
⑤	Effect Effect changes with each tap. Slide: Slide to right or left Fade: Fade in/out Cube: Rotates as cube RGB: Splits into red, green and blue then rotates

⑥	Face Search Zooms in on face.
⑦	Original Size Appears when image is zoomed.

Playback Operations

Open Previous or Next Window	Swipe right or left
Scroll Display	Drag up, down, left, or right
Zoom In or Out	Pinch apart or pinch
Show/Hide Touch Operation Icons	Tap Display

Tip

- For how to use Touch Panel, see P. 1-9.

Creating Animations

Create animations each of which is made of up to 20 frames using still images in My picture folder.

1 → **Data Folder** → → **My Picture** → → **Original Animation** →



Original Animation List

- 2 **<New>** →
- 3 **Select a frame** → → **Select a folder** → → **Select a still image** →
- Repeat this step to assign a series of images to their respective frames.
- **To Cancel an Assigned Image**
→ **Select a frame** → → **Release This** →



4

Note

- Only images in JPEG format can be used for creating animations.
- Some images may be unavailable depending on the image size or file size.
- Images saved on memory card cannot be used.

Tip

- Select an animation you created in Original Animation List and press to play the animation.

Using Playlist (Melodies)

Save melodies to Playlist to play back in the saved order.

1 → **Data Folder** → → **Melody** → → **Playlist**

2 → **Edit Playlist** →

■ To Clear Playlist

→ → **Release Playlist** → → **YES**
→

3 **Select a number** → → **Select a folder** → → **Select a melody** →

Repeat this step to assign other melodies to different numbers.

■ To Cancel an Assigned Melody

→ **Select a number** → → **Release This** →

4

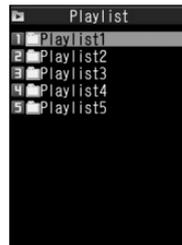
Tip

- Select Playlist folder in Melody and press to play Playlist.
- Changing file names of melodies on Playlist, or deleting melody files clears Playlist.

Using Playlists (Videos)

Save videos to a playlist to play them in the playlist order.

1 → **Data Folder** → → **Videos** → → **Playlist** →



Playlists Window

2 **Select a playlist** → → **Edit Playlist** →

3 **Select a number** → → **Select a folder** → → **Select a video** →
Repeat this step to assign other videos to different numbers.

■ To Cancel an Assigned Video

→ **Select a number** → → **Release This** → → **YES** →

4



Tip

- Select a playlist from a playlist folder and press  to play.

More Features

Advanced

Opening Files

- Check File Information
- Change Order of Files
- Set an Image to Appear in Standby
- Set a Video to Appear in Standby
- Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

 P. 12-17)

Viewing Images

- Play Animation from the Beginning
- Compose Four Images to Make One
- Set Display Size of an Image
- Edit Title of an Original Animation
- Cancel an Original Animation

 P. 12-17)

Playing Melodies

- Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

 P. 12-18)

Playing Videos

- Switch Display Format of File List
- Clear a Playlist

 P. 12-18)

Viewing PDF Files

- Check PDF Properties

 P. 12-18)

Customize

Display Settings

- Set Image List View

 P. 14-5)



Editing Still Images

Basic Flow of Operations

- 1 → **Data Folder** → → **My Picture** → → **Select a folder** → → **Select an image** →



Picture Window

- 2 → **Edit Image** → → **Select an editing option** → → **Edit image**
- 3 to end editing
- 4 → **YES or NO** →
Select **YES** to overwrite original image.
Select **NO** to save as a new file.

Note

- Only images with in File List can be edited.
- Repeated editing may cause deterioration of image quality or increased file size.
- For images larger than WVGA, some edit options are unavailable. File size is automatically reduced to WVGA or smaller when saved.

Adding a Frame

- 1 [Picture] window → → **Edit Image** → → **Frame** →
- 2 **Select a frame** →
 - To Change Frame →
 - To Rotate Frame 180 Degrees →
 - To Cancel Frame →
- 3
- 4 → **YES or NO** →

Adding Stamps

- 1 [Picture] window → → **Edit Image** → → **Marker Stamp** →
- 2 **Select a marker stamp** →
 - To Rotate Marker Stamp → → **90° to right, 90° to left or 180°** →
 - To Enlarge/Reduce Marker Stamp → → **Scale up or Scale down** →
 - To Cancel Marker Stamp →
- 3 → **Select a position** →
 - To Paste Another Marker Stamp → → **Select a marker stamp** →
- 4
- 5 → **YES or NO** →

Pasting a Text Stamp

- 1 [Picture] window → → **Edit Image** → → **Character Stamp** →
- 2 **Enter text** →



■ To Edit Text

⇒ ⇒ *Character input* ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter text ⇒ ●

■ To Change Text Color

⇒ ⇒ *Character Color* ⇒ ● ⇒ ●
Select a color ⇒ ●
Press to toggle color palettes.

■ To Change Font Type

⇒ ⇒ *Font Type* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Gothic* or *Ming-Cho* ⇒ ●

■ To Change Font Size

⇒ ⇒ *Font Size* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a font size ⇒ ●

3 ⇒ *Select a position* ⇒ ●

4 ●

5 ● ⇒ *YES* or *NO* ⇒ ●

Cropping an Image

1 [Picture] window ⇒ ⇒ *Edit Image* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Trim away* ⇒ ●

2 Select a size ⇒ ● ⇒ to select an area ⇒ ●

3 ●

4 ● ⇒ *YES* or *NO* ⇒ ●

Editing Videos

Clip the desired scenes from saved videos.

1 ⇒ *Data Folder* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Videos* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Select a folder* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Select a video* ⇒ ⇒ *Edit Video* ⇒ ●

2 ⇒ *Trim Videos* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Any Size* or *295KB* ⇒ ● ▶

▶ *To Start from Beginning*



▶ *To Start Partway Through Video*

● ⇒ At a desired point ⇒ ● ⇒

Video plays while selected portion is trimmed.

3 ● *to stop* ⇒

Selected portion plays.

When *295KB* is selected, clipping stops automatically when the size of clipped video reaches 295 KB.

4 ● (twice) ⇒ *YES* ⇒ ●

Note

- Only QCIF (176 x 144) or smaller videos with in File List can be clipped.

More Features

Advanced

Editing Files

- Retouch an Image
- Adjust Image Brightness
- Rotate an Image
- Change Image Size
- Correct Backlight
- Refresh Skin Tone

(▶ P. 12-18)



Creating a Folder

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder type ⇒

<Example>When My Picture is Selected



Folder List

- 2 ⇒ **Add Folder** ⇒ ⇒ Enter folder name ⇒

Tip

- Folders can only be created in handset Data Folder.

Moving Files to a Different Folder

- 1 **[File List]** ⇒ Select a file ⇒ ⇒ **Move** ⇒

▶ To Move Selected File

Move this ⇒ ⇒ Select a destination folder ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

▶ To Move Multiple Files

Move selected ⇒ ⇒ Select a destination folder ⇒ ⇒ Select a file ⇒ (repeat to select another file) ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

▶ To Move All Files in a Folder

Move all ⇒ ⇒ Select a destination folder ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

More Features

Advanced

Managing Folders

- Edit a Folder Name
- Delete a Folder
- Delete All Files in My Picture, Melody, Video, Book or PDF Folder

▶ P. 12-18

Managing Files

- Edit a Title in My Picture File List
- Check Volume of Saved Files
- Edit a File Name
- Delete Files

▶ P. 12-19



About Memory Card

Save files to memory cards. Still images and videos shot with handset camera can be saved directly to memory card. Data can be copied and moved between handset and memory card. Data on memory card can also be accessed from Data Folder.

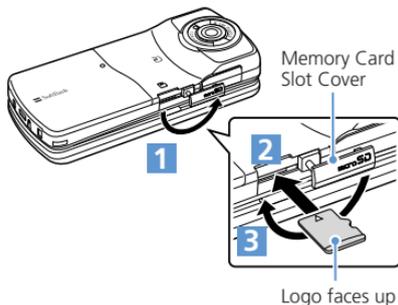
- Handset supports memory cards of up to 16 GB.
- Do not insert or remove memory cards when handset power is on.
- Insert memory cards properly. Otherwise, they cannot be used on handset.
- Do not affix stickers or labels to memory cards. As memory cards are very thin and precise mechanisms, even a thin sticker or label on a memory card may cause contact failure or destruction of data.
- Keep memory cards out of reach of infants who may accidentally swallow them or be injured.
- Do not remove a memory card or power off handset while writing and reading data with that memory card. It may cause data loss or malfunction.
- Access to memory cards may be unavailable when the battery level is low.

Inserting & Removing a Memory Card

Turn handset power off before inserting or removing a memory card.

Insertion

- 1 Open Slot Cover**
- 2 Insert memory card into Memory Card Slot until it locks**
Insert gently with the printed logo facing up.



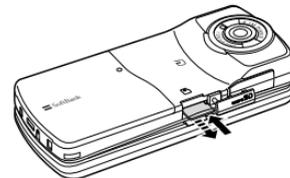
- 3 Close Slot Cover**

Tip

- If  appears in Display, there may be a contact failure. Remove and reinsert memory card.

Removal

- 1 Press and release**
Gently pull out memory card.



Note

- Memory card may spring out.
- Memory card may break if inserted or removed with force.



Formatting a Memory Card

- Format memory cards on handset only. Memory cards formatted on another device or PC may not work.
- Formatting a memory card deletes all the data on it.

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **microSD Manager** ⇒

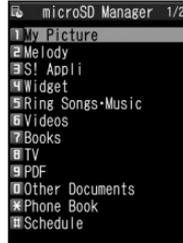
2 ⇒ **microSD format** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter Security Code** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Note

- Do not remove memory card while formatting. Handset/memory card malfunction may occur.
- Make sure that there is no important data left on the memory card before formatting it.

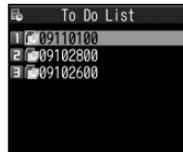
Accessing Memory Card Data

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **microSD Manager** ⇒



microSD Manager Window

2 **Select a category** ⇒



File List

3 **Select a file** ⇒



Data List

4 **Select a data item** ⇒



Data Details



Copying Data between Handset & Memory Card

Following items can be copied to/from handset and memory card:

PIM Data	Phone Book entries, Schedule, To Do List, text memos, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, bookmarks, content keys
Files in Data Folder	Still images, My Pictograms, Flash®, melodies, videos, songs, books, PDF files

Copying Handset Data to Memory Card

Copy Phone Book entries, Schedule, messages, images, videos, etc.

<Example> Copy data in Data Folder to memory card

1 [Data List] → [F] → **Copy to microSD** → ●▶

▶ **To Copy Selected Data**

Copy this → ● (→ Select destination folder → ●)

▶ **To Copy Multiple Data**

Copy selected → ● (→ Select copy destination folder → ●) → Select a data item → ● (repeat to select another data) → [F] → **YES** → ●

▶ **To Copy All Data**

Copy All → ● → Enter Security Code → ● (→ Select copy destination folder → ●) → **YES** → ●

Tip

- When one Phone Book entry or Schedule event that is set as secret is copied to memory card, its secret setting is canceled.
- Files attached to messages may be deleted.
- You need to select a destination folder when copying data in My Picture folder.
- Data saved in Pre-installed folders of Data Folder cannot be copied.
- Content keys are copied collectively at one time.

Copying Memory Card Data to Handset

To Copy Images or Other Data to Handset

1 [MENU] → **Data Folder** → ● → Select a folder type → ● → **microSD** → ● → Select a folder and sub-folder → ● → Select a data item → [F] → **Copy to Phone** → ●▶

▶ **To Copy Selected Data**

Copy this → ●

▶ **To Copy Multiple Data**

Copy selected → ● → Select a data item → ● (repeat to select another data) → [F] → **YES** → ●

▶ **To Copy All Data**

Copy All → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → **YES** → ●



To Copy PIM Data to Handset

- 1** ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **microSD Manager** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a PIM data type** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a data item** ⇒ ⇒ **Copy/OW to Phone** ⇒
 - ▶ **To Copy Selected Files**
Copy This ⇒
 - ▶ **To Copy Multiple Files**
Copy selected ⇒ ⇒ **Select a file** ⇒ (repeat to select another file) ⇒
 - ▶ **To Copy All Files**
Copy All ⇒
- 2** **Enter Security Code** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ (⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒)

Note

- When copying memory card data to handset in overwrite mode, the corresponding data on handset is overwritten by the copied data.
- If the maximum storable number of items is reached when copying all items, copying stops at that point.

Configuring Print Settings of Images

Specify which images on memory card to be printed and the number of prints, etc. in DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) settings so that the images can be printed by DPOF compatible printers or print service shops.

- 1** ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **My Picture** ⇒ ⇒ **microSD** ⇒ ⇒ **DCIM** ⇒
- 2** **Select a folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a still image** ⇒ ⇒ **DPOF setting** ⇒
 - ▶ **To Specify Selected Images**
DPOF set One ⇒
 - ▶ **To Specify Multiple Images**
DPOF set Choice ⇒ ⇒ **Select a still image** ⇒ (repeat to select another image) ⇒
- 3** **Print** ⇒ ⇒ **Print Sheets** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter number of prints** ⇒
- 4** **a Date** ⇒ ⇒ **ON or OFF** ⇒
- 5**

More Features

Advanced

Memory Card

- Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card
- Check & Repair Memory Card
- Delete Data on Memory Card
- Cancel Print Settings of Images

▶ P. 12-19



Accessing Files

Start Here

[File List]	P. 12-3
[Opened File] window	P. 12-3
[Picture] window	P. 12-3
[Melody] window	P. 12-4
[PDF] window	P. 12-5
[Original Animation List]	P. 12-7
[Playlists] window	P. 12-8

Opening Files

Check File Information

[File List] / [Opened File] window (→
Select a file) → → **Image Info, Melody
Info, Properties, Property or Document Info**
→ ●

Change Order of Files

[File List] → → **Sort** → ● → Select a
criterion → ●

Set an Image to Appear in Standby

[File List] / [Opened File] window (→
Select a file) → → **Set as Display** → ●
→ **Stand-by Display** → ● (→ Select a
layout → ● → Confirm preview → ●)
 Set images to appear when making calls or
sending messages.

Set a Video to Appear in Standby

[File List] → Select a file → →
Stand-by Display → ● → **YES** → ●

Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

[File List] / [Opened File] window (→
Select a file) → → **Ring Tone** → ● →
Select an item → ●
 Only melodies can be set as ringtones from
Opened File window.

Viewing Images

Play Animation from the Beginning

[Picture] window → → **Retry** → ●

Compose Four Images to Make One

[File List] → → **Composite Image** → ●
→ Select a position → ● → Select a folder
→ ● → Select an image → ● → Repeat
the same step to assign three other images
to their respective positions → → ●
 Only images in JPEG format can be used for
creating composite images.
 Copyright-protected images are unavailable.
 Images saved on memory card cannot be
used.
 Some images cannot be used depending on
their size.

Set Display Size of an Image

[Picture] window → → **Set Image Disp.**
→ ● → **Normal or Fit in Display** → ●

Edit Title of an Original Animation

[Original Animation List] → Select an
animation → → **Edit Title** → ● → Edit
title → ●

Cancel an Original Animation

[Original Animation List] → Select an
animation → → **Release Animation** →
● → **YES** → ●



Playing Melodies

Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

[Melody] window ⇨ ⇨ *Set Repeat Play* ⇨ ⇨ *ON* ⇨

Playing Videos

Switch Display Format of File List

[File List] ⇨ ⇨ *List Setting* ⇨ ⇨ *Title* or *Title+Image* ⇨

Clear a Playlist

[Playlists] window ⇨ Select a playlist ⇨ ⇨ *Release Playlist* ⇨ ⇨ *YES* ⇨

Viewing PDF Files

Check PDF Properties

[PDF] window ⇨ ⇨ *Document Property* ⇨

Editing Files

Start Here

[Picture] window.....P. 12-10

Retouch an Image

[Picture] window ⇨ ⇨ *Edit Image* ⇨ ⇨ *Retouch* ⇨ ⇨ Select an effect ⇨ (three times) ⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨

Adjust Image Brightness

[Picture] window ⇨ ⇨ *Edit Image* ⇨ ⇨ *Brightness* ⇨ ⇨ to adjust brightness ⇨ (twice) ⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨

Rotate an Image

[Picture] window ⇨ ⇨ *Edit Image* ⇨ ⇨ *Rotate* ⇨ ⇨ *90° to right, 90° to left* or *180°* ⇨ (three times) ⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨

Change Image Size

[Picture] window ⇨ ⇨ *Edit Image* ⇨ ⇨ *Change Size* ⇨ ⇨ Select a size ⇨ (three times) ⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨

Correct Backlight

[Picture] window ⇨ ⇨ *Edit Image* ⇨ ⇨ *Correct Backlight* ⇨ (three times) ⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨

Refresh Skin Tone

[Picture] window ⇨ ⇨ *Edit Image* ⇨ ⇨ *Refresh Skin Tone* ⇨ (three times) ⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨

Managing Folders

Start Here

[Folder List]P. 12-12

Edit a Folder Name

[Folder List] ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ⇨ *Edit Folder Name* ⇨ ⇨ Edit folder name ⇨

Only names of user-created folders can be edited.



Delete a Folder

[Folder List] ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ⇨ **Delete Folder** ⇨ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ (⇨ **YES** ⇨) ⇨ **YES** ⇨

- To Select *Ring Songs-Music*

[Folder List] ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ⇨ **Delete Folder** ⇨ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ⇨ **Delete This, Delete Selected** or **Delete All** ⇨ (⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ⇨ Repeat to select another folder ⇨ (⇨ **YES** or **NO** ⇨) ⇨ **YES** ⇨

- Only user-created folders can be deleted.
- Files in the selected folder are also deleted.
- When files that are set as wallpaper, ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.

Delete All Files in My Picture, Melody, Video, Book or PDF Folder

[Folder List] ⇨ ⇨ **Delete all Image, Delete All or Delete all Doc.** ⇨ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

- When files that are set as wallpaper, ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.

Managing Files

Start Here

[File List]P. 12-3

Edit a Title in My Picture File List

[File List] ⇨ Select an image file ⇨ ⇨ **Edit Title** ⇨ ⇨ Edit title ⇨

Titles of files saved in Pre-installed folders cannot be edited.

Check Volume of Saved Files

[File List] ⇨ ⇨ **Memory Info** ⇨

Edit a File Name

[File List] ⇨ Select a file ⇨ ⇨ **Edit File Name** ⇨ ⇨ Edit file name ⇨

Names of files saved in Pre-installed folders cannot be edited.

Delete Files

[File List] ⇨ Select a file ⇨ ⇨ **Delete** ⇨

- To Select *Delete this* ⇨ **Delete this** ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨
- To Select *Delete selected* ⇨ **Delete selected** ⇨ ⇨ Select file ⇨ (repeat to select another file) ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨
- To Select *Delete all* ⇨ **Delete all** ⇨ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

Memory Card

Start Here

[microSD Manager] window P. 12-14
 [File List]P. 12-14
 [Data List]P. 12-14
 [Data Details].....P. 12-14

Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card

[microSD Manager] window, [File List] , [Data List] or [Data Details] ⇨ ⇨ **microSD Info** or **Memory Info** ⇨



Check & Repair Memory Card

[microSD Manager] window → →

Check *microSD* → ● → YES → ●

To cancel checking and repairing a memory card, press or .

Some memory cards may not be repairable.

Delete Data on Memory Card

[File List] → Select a data item → →

Delete → ●

● To Select *Delete this*

→ *Delete this* → ● → YES → ●

● To Select *Delete selected*

→ *Delete selected* → ● → Select file →

● (repeat to select another file) → →

YES → ●

● To Select *Delete all*

→ *Delete all* → ● → Enter Security Code

→ ● → YES → ●

Cancel Print Settings of Images

→ *Data Folder* → ● → *My Picture* →

● → *microSD* → ● → *DCIM* → ● →

Select a folder → ● → Select a still image

→ → *DPOF setting* → ● → *DPOF set*

One or DPOF set Choice → ● (→ Select an

image → ● (repeat to select another

image) → → *Print OFF* or *All Print OFF*

→ ●

Connectivity



Infrared	13-2	Searching & Connecting to Priority Connections.....	13-14
Getting Started.....	13-2	Checking or Changing WLAN Settings.....	13-14
Transferring Data via Infrared.....	13-3	Using Wi-Fi Contents.....	13-15
Bluetooth®	13-5	Advanced Features	13-16
About Bluetooth®.....	13-5	Bluetooth®.....	13-16
Adding a Bluetooth® Device.....	13-6	WLAN.....	13-16
Connecting.....	13-6		
Calling with Wireless Device.....	13-7		
Playing music and audio with Wireless Device.....	13-7		
Suspending Bluetooth® Connections.....	13-8		
Setting Bluetooth® to Connection Standby.....	13-8		
PC Connection	13-9		
USB Driver.....	13-9		
Data Transfer.....	13-9		
Setting USB Mode.....	13-9		
Accessing Memory Card Data from a PC.....	13-9		
Using Handset as Modem.....	13-10		
WLAN	13-11		
About WLAN.....	13-11		
Activating WLAN.....	13-11		
Connecting to WLAN.....	13-12		
Setting Priority Connections.....	13-14		

13



Getting Started

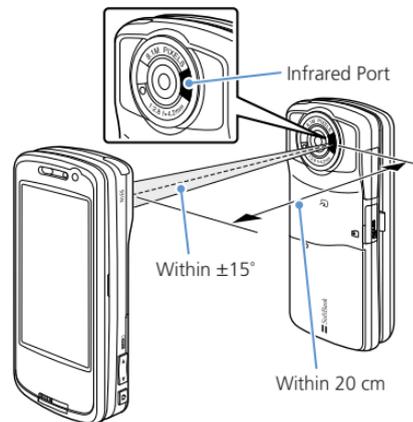
Wirelessly exchange files with infrared compatible devices. The following files are transferable via infrared:

- Still images
- Melodies
- Videos
- My Pictograms
- Songs
- Books
- Widgets
- PDF Files
- Phone Book entries, Account Details
- Schedule events
- To Do List tasks
- Received messages, sent messages
- Draft messages
- Text memos
- Common Phrases (Templates)
- Own Dictionary data
- Bookmarks (Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser)

Precautions

- File transfer may not start depending on receiving device status. Some settings or content may be lost depending on the receiving handset model.
- Handset is out of range during infrared transmission, so such functions as voice and video calls, the Internet access and sending/receiving S! Mails are unavailable. This may continue even after infrared transmission is finished.
- Transferring data may take a while depending on the amount of data. Some data may not be received by handset.
- During transmission, progress bar shows approximate number of files transferred. Note that actual progress may be faster.
- Some pictographs and symbols in messages and Phone Book entries may not be received by handset correctly.

- Align Infrared Ports of both sending and receiving devices, as shown below.



- Do not move either device until a message appears indicating completion of data transmission. Do not place any objects between the devices. Do not obstruct Infrared Ports.
- Infrared transmission may be disrupted by direct sunlight, directly under fluorescent lighting or near other infrared devices.



Authentication Password

To transfer multiple files at once, the same authentication password must be entered on both sending and receiving devices.

Transferring Data via Infrared

Sending One File

Send one file at a time.

- 1 Select a file → → **Send Ir Data** → ●
- 2 Set the receiving device to receive data
- 3 Align Infrared Ports → **YES** → ●
Transfer starts.
Message appears when file transfer is complete.
■ **To Cancel Transfer**
→

Note

- File transfer is unavailable for Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card.

Tip

- In a data list window, press to send a JPEG image via high-speed transmission.
- In the case of high-speed transmission of JPEG images, the receiving device may fail to receive images, even when the image transmission is successfully completed by the sending device.

Receiving One File

- 1 → **Tools** → ● → **Receive Ir Data** → ● → **Receive** → ●
- 2 Align Infrared Ports
Transfer starts.
■ **To Cancel Transfer**
→
- 3 When file is received → **YES** → ●
File is saved to handset.
File is discarded if no operation is performed within 30 seconds of transfer.

Sending All Files

Send all files at one time from a data list window/data details window.

- 1 In a data list window/data details window → → **Send All Ir Data** → ● (→ ●)
- 2 Enter Security Code → ● → Enter authentication password
- 3 Set the receiving device to receive data
- 4 Align Infrared Ports → **YES** → ●
Transfer starts.
When all files are sent, a message appears indicating completion of transfer.
■ **To Cancel Transfer**
→

Note

- All file transfer is unavailable for still image, melody, video, My Pictogram, song, book and widget files.
- File transfer is unavailable for Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card.



Receiving All Files

- 1  ⇒ **Tools** ⇒  ⇒ **Receive Ir Data** ⇒  ⇒ **Receive All** ⇒ 
- 2 **Enter Security Code** ⇒  ⇒ **Enter authentication password**
- 3 **Align Infrared Ports** ⇒ **YES** ⇒ 
Transfer starts.
- 4 **When an overwrite confirmation appears** ⇒ **YES** ⇒ 
Transfer starts.
Message appears when files are saved to handset.
■ **To Cancel Transfer**
⇒ 

Note

- Existing handset files are overwritten (e.g. When all messages are transferred, existing messages, including protected messages are overwritten. When all Phone Book/Schedule entries are transferred, all data including secret data is overwritten).
- File transfer stops when maximum storable capacity is reached.

More Features

Customize

Phone Book

- Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared

 **P. 14-11**



About Bluetooth®

Transmit data by wireless connection between Bluetooth® compatible devices (wireless headset, handsfree device, audio device, etc.).

Handset Bluetooth® specifications are as follows.

Version	Bluetooth® standard Ver. 2.0 + EDR compliant
Profiles	HSP: Headset Profile HFP: Hands-free Profile A2DP: Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (stereo, high quality) AVRCP: Audio/Video Remote Control Profile

Precautions

- Handset is not guaranteed for connection/operation with all Bluetooth® devices.
- Connected Bluetooth® devices must be certified as Bluetooth® standard as designated by Bluetooth SIG.
- Depending on other party device characteristics/specifications, there may be inability to connect, incompatible operation/display methods, or inability to transmit data even if other party is Bluetooth® standard.
- The frequency band (2.4 GHz) used by Bluetooth® devices is shared with other kinds of devices. Interference from other devices may result in decreased transmission speed/distance or disconnection.
- Static noise may occur depending on the connection device and environment during wireless/handsfree talk.
- TV audio is unavailable with Bluetooth® devices non-compliant with the copyright protection standard SCMS-T.
- Bluetooth® devices and WLAN (IEEE 802.11b/g) use the same frequency band (2.4 GHz). Use near a device equipped with WLAN will result in interference. If you experience noise or poor/no connection, try the following.

- Keep the Bluetooth® device at least 10 m away from WLAN devices.
- Turn WLAN devices off when using a Bluetooth® device within 10 m of WLAN devices.

Handset Functions

Headset Profile	Wireless talk is available when connected to a wireless headset.
Handsfree Profile	Handsfree talk is available when connected to a car nav and using a microphone-speaker.
Audio Profile	Enjoy music/TV audio when connected to a wireless headset and audio device.

Note

- When connected to a wireless headset or handsfree compatible device, a ring tone sounds when **Forward Ring Tone** is set to **OFF** and **Headset Usage Setting** is set to **Headset+speaker**.



Adding a Bluetooth® Device

Search and add a device.

- 1 → **Tools** → → **Bluetooth** →



Bluetooth Menu

- 2 **Register New Devices** →
Handset searches for devices.
Added device appears in Device List.
- 3 **Select device to add** → → **YES** →

■ When Passkey Required

- Enter Bluetooth® passkey →
- Enter the same Bluetooth® passkey (4 to 16 characters) for both sending or receiving devices.
- Receiving device must have passkey entered within 30 seconds after the sending device.
- Enter the designated passkey for a handsfree device (other party).

Tip

- When a Bluetooth® device is not added, search and add from *Device List* in Bluetooth menu.

Connecting

Connect to an added device.

- 1 **[Bluetooth Menu]** → **Device List** →



- **To Search for New Bluetooth® Device** →

- 2 **Select target device** →
 - 3 **Select service** →
 flashes once connected.
For a device capable of connecting to multiple services, a confirmation window will ask if you want to connect to another service.
- **To Discontinue a Connected Service** → → **YES** →



Device List

The type of added device and service are shown by indicators.



Device List

①	Device Type¹ PC Phone Audio/Video Other
②	Status <input type="radio"/> Added Detected
③	Services² Headset Handsfree Audio Remote Control

④ **Device Name**
Bluetooth® address appears for non-added devices.

- 1 An icon with a key mark appears for protected devices.
- 2 Service status appears as below.

Icon	Letters	Backgr.	Border	Status
	gray	—	—	Connection history: No
	white	—	—	Connection history: Yes
	white	—	white	Connection standby
	black	green	white	Connected

Calling with Wireless Device

Connect wireless headsets or handsfree devices.

- 1 **Connect to target device**
- 2 **Make/receive call with device**
Talk switches each time you press and hold

Playing music and audio with Wireless Device

Connect to a device with audio device to play Music Player music and TV audio.

- 1 **Connect to target device**
- 2 **Play music, TV or etc.**

Tip

- To adjust volume, use volume control on Bluetooth® device.
- Connecting once to an audio device with audio service is stored as a connection history. When handset's Bluetooth® function is active (*Bluetooth ON*), audio devices with a connection history are automatically connected through audio service when playing music or TV.



Suspending Bluetooth® Connections

Suspend all Bluetooth® functions (connected or on standby) and disable Bluetooth®.

- 1 [Bluetooth Menu] ⇨ **Bluetooth OFF** ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

Tip

- To activate Bluetooth®:
[Bluetooth Menu] ⇨ **Bluetooth ON** ⇨

Setting Bluetooth® to Connection Standby

Set standby status for all added devices.

- 1 [Bluetooth Menu] ⇨ **Accept Registered** ⇨

- 2 **Accept All** ⇨

- To Set Individually
⇨ **Separate Setting** ⇨ ⇨ Select service ⇨

Services with checked boxes enter Connection Standby.

- To Release all Connection Standby
⇨ **Release All** ⇨

More Features

Advanced

Bluetooth®

- Protect Added Device
- Change Name of Added Device
- Delete Added Device
- Open Information for Added Device

▶ P. 13-16)

Customize

Bluetooth®

- Set Detection Time for Device
- Set Whether to Send Ring Tone for Voice Call, Video Call to Headset or Handsfree Device
- Set Whether to Enable Calling from External Device
- Check Handset Bluetooth® Information

▶ P. 14-29)



PC Connection

Connect handset to a PC via USB cable to use the following functions.

- USB cable is sold separately.

Data transfer*	Transfer Phone Book, Schedule and To Do List data between handset and a PC (P. 13-9).
USB memory	Use memory card inserted in handset as an external drive of a PC to read and write data with memory card (P. 13-9).
MTP Mode	Use Windows Media® Player to save music data to memory card (P. 9-4).

* USB driver must be installed in advance.

USB Driver

Install USB Driver to connect handset to a PC. Download USB Driver from the following site (Japanese).

<http://www.n-keitai.com/guide/download/>

Data Transfer

Use SoftBank Utility Software to transfer data between handset and a PC. Download

SoftBank Utility Software from the following site (Japanese).

<http://www.n-keitai.com/guide/download/>

- Install USB Driver before using SoftBank Utility Software.

Setting USB Mode

Set USB mode before connecting handset to your PC via USB cable.

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **External Connection** ⇒ ⇒ **USB Mode Setting** ⇒

- 2 **Communication Mode or microSD Mode** ⇒

Set to **Communication Mode** for using SoftBank Utility Software or using handset as a modem (packet transmission).

Set to **microSD Mode** for accessing memory card data from a PC.

Accessing Memory Card Data from a PC

Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable, and access memory card data from the PC.

- Set **USB Mode Setting** to **microSD Mode** in advance.

- 1 **Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable**

This enables memory card data to be accessed from your PC.

- 2 **When you are finished, disconnect handset from the PC**

Follow the procedure for safely removing external devices (which differs slightly according to the operating system), when disconnecting handset from the PC.



Note

- Make sure handset and the PC are properly connected. Otherwise, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.
- If handset's battery is almost or completely empty, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost. Check handset's battery level and the power of your PC.
- Do not remove the USB cable while copying data from your PC to handset. If the USB cable is removed during data transfer, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.

Using Handset as Modem

Use handset as an external modem for packet transmission.

- Refer to the instructions of your Internet service provider or the manual of your PC for the network connection settings on your PC.
- To use "Access Internet" for data communication, you do not have to sign up with a service provider. For information about the service overview, access points and setting procedures, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-57).



About WLAN

Use WLAN for data transmission at higher speed than a 3G/GSM system.

- Only available in Japan.
- Use Keitai Wi-Fi to connect to Yahoo! Keitai with household WLAN or public WLAN.
- **ON/OFF** in **WLAN Setting** is set to **ON** by default. Set to **OFF** if not using WLAN. If set to **ON**, connection priority is for WLAN.

Note

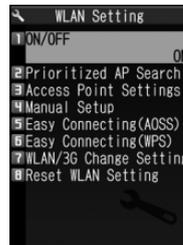
- Handset may automatically switch from WLAN access to 3G access depending on signal conditions. Packet transmission fees apply for 3G access.

Tip

- Set a confirmation to appear when switching from WLAN to 3G access.
 MENU ⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ WLAN Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ WLAN/3G Change Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Confirm Mode ⇒ ●
- Subscription to an internet service is required.
- Prior application required to use Keitai Wi-Fi. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-57).
- For information on services supported by Keitai Wi-Fi, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website: (<http://www.softbank.jp/>)
- To access a household WLAN or public WLAN access point, use Direct Access (Direct Access available with PC Site Browser only).
- Voice/video calls unavailable with WLAN connections. Move to a 3G service area to make calls.

Activating WLAN

- 1 MENU ⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ WLAN Setting ⇒ ●



WLAN Setting Window

- 2 ON/OFF ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ●

Note

- *Other Function active Cannot operate* may appear when toggling **ON/OFF** in **WLAN Setting**. Wait a while and try again.
- When using S! Quick News (P. 10-5) outside a WLAN area, the handset will receive news information via 3G access. Packet transmission fees apply for 3G access.
- For a pay-as-you-go public WLAN service, fees are incurred until you log out. It is also recommended that you deactivate WLAN after using the service.
- Network (Internet) S! Appli are unavailable with WLAN access.



Tip

- Alternatively, press and hold or press and hold to set WLAN **ON** or **OFF**.
- When WLAN is activated, the access points saved in **Priority Settings** (P. 13-14) are automatically searched for connection in order.

Network Connection Status

Indicators show connection strength/status.

	Connected via 3G network
	Ready for Keitai Wi-Fi connection
	Connected via Keitai Wi-Fi
	Ready for Direct Access connection
	Connected via Direct Access
	WLAN out of range

Note

- When appears, continuous standby time may be shorter.
- When accessing via Keitai Wi-Fi, make sure for Keitai Wi-Fi appears before using.
- When accessing via Direct Access, make sure appears before using.

Connecting to WLAN

Configure required settings for connecting to WLAN from one of three methods: "Easy Connecting (AOSS)," "Easy Connecting (WPS)" or "Access Point Search."

- The setting is saved as a profile.
- A profile contains the setting items required for connecting to access points. A profile can also be edited directly.
- Bluetooth® devices and WLAN (IEEE 802.11b/g) use the same frequency band (2.4 GHz). Use near a Bluetooth® device will result in interference. The same may occur if WLAN is used while handset is connected to a Bluetooth® device. If you experience noise or poor/no connection, try the following.
 - Keep Bluetooth® devices at least 10 m away from WLAN devices.
 - Turn Bluetooth® devices off when using a WLAN device within 10 m of Bluetooth® devices.
 - Avoid using handset's Bluetooth® and WLAN functions at the same time.

Tip

- If the profile is set using **Easy Connecting (AOSS)**, **Easy Connecting (WPS)** or **Access Point Search**, it is automatically saved in **Priority Settings** (P. 13-14).

Easy Connecting (AOSS)

Enable WLAN connection by only pressing an access point's button.

- Available only when access points support AOSS™.

- [WLAN Setting] window** ⇨ **Easy Connecting(AOSS)** ⇨ ●
- YES or NO** ⇨ ●
- Press access point's AOSS button until lamp blinks**
Profile is saved. WLAN connection is established.

Easy Connecting (WPS)

Enable WLAN connection using PIN Method or PBC Method (Pushbutton Method).

- Available only when access points support WPS.

- [WLAN Setting] window** ⇨ **Easy Connecting(WPS)** ⇨ ●
- YES or NO** ⇨ ● ⇨
 - ▶ **To Set Using PIN Method**
PIN Method ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an access point ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter shown PIN code as access point



- ▶ **To Set Using PBC Method**
PBC Method ⇨ ● ⇨ Press access point's pushbutton
 Profile is saved. WLAN connection is established.

Searching Access Points

Search for access points near handset for connection.

- [WLAN Setting] window** ⇨ **Access Point Settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Access Point Search** ⇨ ●
- Select an access point** ⇨ ●
 When an access point with  is selected, entry of a security key with **Set Security Method** (P. 14-30) is required.
- YES** ⇨ ●
- Set items** ⇨ 
 For settable items, see P. 14-30.
 Profile is saved. WLAN connection is established.

Setting Each Profile

Connect to access point(s) after setting profiles individually.

- [WLAN Setting] window** ⇨ **Manual Setup** ⇨ ●



Manual Setup Window

- Profile Setting** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Select a profile** ⇨ ●
- Set items** ⇨  ⇨  (Finish)
 For settable items, see P. 14-30.
- Save to Priority Settings** (P. 13-14)

Using BB Mobilepoint

BB mobilepoint profile is saved to handset by default. Set ID & password to connect to BB mobilepoint.

- BB mobilepoint is a public WLAN service provided by SOFTBANK TELECOM Corp. to participating providers.
- BB mobilepoint is available in areas that have the BB mobilepoint sticker.
- BB mobilepoint requires no fees from Keitai Wi-Fi subscribers.

- [Manual Setup] window** ⇨ **Profile Setting** ⇨ ● ⇨ **BBモバイルポイント** ⇨ ●
- Public WLAN Setting** ⇨ ● ⇨ **ON** ⇨ ●
- ID** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Enter ID** ⇨ ●
- Password** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Enter password** ⇨ ●
-  (three times) ⇨  (Finish)
- Save to Priority Settings** (P. 13-14)



Note

- If a profile other than *ID* or *Password* has been changed, connection to BB mobilepoint may be unavailable. If connection is no longer available, perform *Reset Profile* (P. 13-14). After initializing the profile, configure settings again.

Setting Priority Connections

Set connections (access points) that will be prioritized over other connections.
If you enter an area with access points already set as priority connections, handset connects automatically.

- 1 [WLAN Setting] window → **Access Point Settings** → ●
- 2 **Priority Settings** → ●



Handset connects in order starting from top item number.

Priority Settings Window

- 3 Select a placement priority → ●
→ Select a profile → ● → []

Searching & Connecting to Priority Connections

If handset does not connect automatically to an access point, search again for an access point saved to *Priority Settings*.

- 1 [WLAN Setting] window → **Prioritized AP Search** → ●

Tip

- Alternatively, in Standby, press and hold ● to perform *Prioritized AP Search*.

Checking or Changing WLAN Settings

Checking Profile Settings

- 1 [Manual Setup] window → **Profile Setting** → ● → Select a profile → ●
- 2 Select settings to check → [Y]

Changing Profile Settings

- 1 [Manual Setup] window → **Profile Setting** → ● → Select a profile → ●
- 2 Change items → [] → [] (Finish)
For changeable items, see P. 14-30.

Copying Profiles

- 1 [Manual Setup] window → **Profile Setting** → ● → Select a profile to copy → []
- 2 **Copy** → ● → Select a copy destination profile → ● → **YES** → ●
- 3 [] → [] (Finish)
All items except for the profile name are copied.

Initializing Profile Settings

- 1 [Manual Setup] window → **Profile Setting** → ●
- 2 Select a profile to initialize → []
→ **Reset Profile** → ● → **YES** → ●
→ [] → [] (Finish)



Note

- If a profile saved to *Priority Settings* is initialized, it is also removed from *Priority Settings*.

Checking Connection and MAC Address

1 [Manual Setup] window ⇨
Display Information ⇨ ●

2 **Connection Status or MAC Address** ⇨ ●

Connection Status	Indicates the connection profile name, ESSID and the connection channel status. Press ● to update connection status.
MAC Address	References individual hardware addresses used to differentiate hosts in WLAN.

Note

- The initial MAC address is "00:00:00:00:00:00."
The correct MAC address is applied when the WLAN function is used.

Using Wi-Fi Contents

Use Wi-Fi Contents to view large-size videos.

1 MENU ⇨ **Entertainment** ⇨ ● ⇨
Wi-Fi Contents ⇨ ●

Follow onscreen instructions.

More Features

Advanced

WLAN

- Add Priority Connection
- Overwrite Priority Connection
- Insert Priority Connection
- Delete Priority Connection
- Change Order of Priority Connection

▶ P. 13-16

Customize

WLAN

- Show Confirmation Before Switching to 3G
- Reset WLAN Setting
- Change Profile Name
- Set ESSID
- Select Wireless Mode Setting
- Set IP Address
- Set DNS Server
- Use HTTP Proxy Server
- Set Security Method
- Set to Use Public Wireless LAN
- Set Access Mode

▶ P. 14-30



Bluetooth®

Start Here

[Device List]P. 13-7

Protect Added Device

[Device List] → Select target device → → **Protection Setting** → ●

If already protected, select **Protection Setting** to cancel protection.

Change Name of Added Device

[Device List] → Select target device → → **Change Device Name** → ● → Enter device name → ●

Delete Added Device

[Device List] → Select target device → → **Delete** → ● → **YES** → ●

Open Information for Added Device

[Device List] → Select target device → → **Description** → ●

WLAN

Start Here

[Priority Settings] windowP. 13-14

Add Priority Connection

[Priority Settings] window → → **Add** → ● → Select a profile to add → ● →

The profile is added as the connection with the lowest priority.

Overwrite Priority Connection

[Priority Settings] window → Select a profile to overwrite → → **Overwrite** → ● → Select a profile to overwrite with → ● →

Insert Priority Connection

[Priority Settings] window → Select a placement to insert profile → → **Insert** → ● → Select a profile to insert → ● →

Delete Priority Connection

[Priority Settings] window → Select a profile to delete → → **Delete** → ● → **YES** → ● →

Change Order of Priority Connection

[Priority Settings] window → Select a profile to change placement priority → → **Change Priority** → ● → Select a profile to change placement priority with → ● →

Customization



Clock, Display & Sounds.....	14-2
Phone Book & Calls.....	14-11
Mail.....	14-15
Internet.....	14-18
TV.....	14-20
Camera.....	14-22
Player & S! Appli.....	14-23
Entertainment.....	14-24
Other Settings.....	14-26

14



Clock, Display & Sounds

Clock

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Clock** ⇒ ●

Hide Clock	⇒ Clock Display ⇒ ● ⇒ Display ⇒ ● ⇒ OFF ⇒ ●
Clock Size	⇒ Clock Display ⇒ ● ⇒ Size ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ●
Clock Color	⇒ Clock Display ⇒ ● ⇒ Color ⇒ ● ⇒ Black or White ⇒ ●
Set Auto Time Adjustment	⇒ Set Main Time ⇒ ● ⇒ Auto Time Adjust ⇒ ● ⇒ Auto ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press to change city/area name in Time Zone Selection field. • If auto time adjustment is still not performed, open Yahoo! Keitai top page again and perform Reload before returning to Standby.
Manually Adjust Time	⇒ Set Main Time ⇒ ● ⇒ Auto Time Adjust ⇒ ● ⇒ Manual(Date Time Set) ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter date and time ⇒ ●
Summer Time	⇒ Set Main Time ⇒ ● ⇒ Summer Time ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ●

Time Zone (Sub Clock)	⇒ Set Sub Clock ⇒ ● ⇒ Display Method ⇒ ● ⇒ Always ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒ ●
Hide Sub Clock	⇒ Set Sub Clock ⇒ ● ⇒ Display Method ⇒ ● ⇒ OFF ⇒ ●
Summer Time (Sub Clock)	⇒ Set Sub Clock ⇒ ● ⇒ Summer Time ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ●
Time Zone Major City (Sub Clock)	⇒ Set Sub Clock ⇒ ● ⇒ Area Name ⇒ ● ⇒ Display ⇒ ●

Alarm

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Clock** ⇒ ●

Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time	⇒ Alarm Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Operation Preferred or Alarm Preferred ⇒ ●
Change Alarm Tone	⇒ Clock Alarm Tone Set ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an alarm tone



Clock, Display & Sounds

Auto Power On/Off

Set Auto Power On/Off*	<p> ⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Clock ⇒ ● ⇒ Auto Power ON or Auto Power OFF ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter time ⇒ ● ⇒ 1 Time or Daily ⇒ ● </p>
------------------------	--

* When near high precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals, or in areas where handset use is forbidden (aboard aircraft, in hospitals, etc.), set **Auto Power ON** to **OFF** and turn handset power off.

Style Mode Settings

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Style Mode Setting** ⇒ ●

Set Display Design Collectively	<p> ⇒ Select a style ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● (⇒ YES or NO ⇒ ●) </p>
Check Default Style Mode Settings	<p> ⇒ Select a style ⇒ • Details of some items can be checked by selecting an item and pressing . </p>
Edit Title of a Style	<p> ⇒ Select a style ⇒ ⇒ Edit Title ⇒ ● ⇒ Edit title ⇒ ● </p>
Save Current Style Mode Settings as Favorite	<p> ⇒ お気に入り (Favorites) ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ Take Setting Info ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● • The current style mode settings can later be recalled collectively from お気に入り when they are changed. </p>

Change Each Item for Favorites ⇒ お気に入り (Favorites) ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image

Clear All Favorite Settings ⇒ お気に入り (Favorites) ⇒ ⇒ **Reset Setting Info** ⇒ ● ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ●

Display Settings

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Display** ⇒ ●

Wallpaper	<p> ⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Stand-by Display ⇒ ● ⇒ My Picture or Videos ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image/video (⇒ Select a layout ⇒ ● (twice)) </p>
Show Calendar in Standby	<p> ⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Stand-by Display ⇒ ● ⇒ Calendar ⇒ ● ⇒ Background ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image ⇒ ● (twice) • Select No Background if you do not want any image in the background of the calendar. • Press ●, use to select the calendar and press ● to operate it. Use to switch to the previous/next month. Press ● to activate Schedule. </p>



Clock, Display & Sounds

Set Wallpaper Image to Change When Handset Returns to Standby	⇒ <i>Display Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Stand-by Display</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Random Display</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a layout ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Each time handset returns to Standby, a different wallpaper image appears. Images are randomly selected from the set folder. Available in Touch Style or Communication Style.
Set a Wake-up Image	⇒ <i>Display Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Wake-up Display</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>My Picture</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image
Set a Wake-up Message	⇒ <i>Display Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Wake-up Display</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Message</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter message ⇒ ●
Set an Outgoing Call/Message Image	⇒ <i>Display Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Dialing, Video Call Dialing or Mail Sending</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image
Set Image or Video for Incoming Call/Message	⇒ <i>Display Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Calling, Video Call Calling or Mail Receiving</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Select Calling Disp.</i> or <i>Select Receiving Disp.</i> ⇒ ● (⇒ <i>My Picture</i> or <i>Videos</i> ⇒ ●) ⇒ Set an image/video
Set Image for New Message/Received Result Window	⇒ <i>Display Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Retrieve New or Mail Rec'd Result</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image
Display Color Scheme	⇒ <i>Display Design</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Color Theme</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ●

Battery Level Indicator/Signal Strength Indicator Design	⇒ <i>Display Design</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Icon Pattern</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Battery Icon</i> or <i>Antenna Icon</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ●
Set Softkey Color	⇒ <i>Display Design</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Soft Key</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ●
Set Font Type	⇒ <i>Font</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Font Type</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Gothic</i> or <i>Ming-cho</i> ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alternatively, press and hold [7] in Standby to make font settings.
Set Font Thickness	⇒ <i>Font</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Thickness</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Thin</i> or <i>Bold</i> ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alternatively, press and hold [7] in Standby to make font settings.
Set Font Sizes Collectively	⇒ <i>Font</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Character Size</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Standard</i> or <i>X-large</i> ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Items settable with <i>Separate Setting</i> for <i>Character Size</i> can be set collectively. Alternatively, press and hold [7] in Standby to make font settings.
Set Font Size for Each Function Window	⇒ <i>Font</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Character Size</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Separate Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a window ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ● ⇒ [8] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alternatively, press and hold [7] in Standby to make font settings. In PC Site Browser, only available in Small Screen view.



Clock, Display & Sounds

Interface Language	<p>⇒ 言語選択 ⇒ ● ⇒ 日本語 or English ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To change interface language from Japanese to English: <p>⇒ [MENU] ⇒ 設定 ⇒ ● ⇒ ディスプレイ ⇒ ● ⇒ Language ⇒ ● ⇒ English ⇒ ●</p>
Set Image List View	<p>⇒ Viewer Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Picture or Title ⇒ ●</p>
Guard from Prying Eyes	<p>⇒ Privacy Angle ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alternatively, press and hold [B] in Standby to toggle on and off. The other party may hear a short beep when this operation is performed during a call. When <i>Privacy Angle</i> is set, Display is whitish and the viewing angle is narrower. Turn power off then on again to cancel Privacy Angle.
Show New Message Info While Viewing TV	<p>⇒ Quick Info Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Display Sender or Display Sender/Subject ⇒ ●</p>
Set Effect for Screen Change	<p>⇒ Screen Effect ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ●</p>
Display Quality	<p>⇒ Image Display Mode ⇒ ● ⇒ Normal, Vivid or Dynamic ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> TV image quality setting follows the <i>Visual Image Effect</i> setting in <i>TV Effect</i>. A preview image for each mode appears during selection in <i>Image Display Mode</i> to check the effect.

Backlight

Start Here [MENU] ⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Display ⇒ ● ⇒ Backlight ⇒ ●

Set Backlight & Power Saving	<p>⇒ Lighting ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ● (⇒ Select time Backlight is lit ⇒ ●) ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ● (⇒ Enter a time before the Power Saver Mode is activated)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press and hold [5] to toggle TV Power Saving on/off. When the Power Saver Mode is activated, nothing appears in Standby. Pressing any key cancels the Power Saver Mode.
Set Backlight during Charging	<p>⇒ Charging ⇒ ● ⇒ Standard or All Time ON ⇒ ●</p>
Set Backlight Area	<p>⇒ Area ⇒ ● ⇒ LCD+Keys or LCD ⇒ ●</p>
Set Brightness of Backlight	<p>⇒ Brightness ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ●</p> <p>⇒ Select a Level ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When set to <i>ON</i>, Display Backlight automatically adjusts to surrounding brightness. Key Backlight automatically switches on/off. <i>Brightness</i> is <i>Level 4</i> by default. For maximum brightness, set to <i>Level 6</i>. Note that a higher setting will decrease battery time faster.



Desktop Icons

Start Here → **Settings** → → **Display** →

Set Desktop Theme	→ Desktop Icon → → Select a theme → → YES → • Press to see details of the selected theme.
Change Icon Design of a Theme	→ Desktop Icon → → Select a theme → → Select an icon → → CHG Icon Image → → Select Icon Image or Default Icon Image → (→ Set and icon)
Change Order of Icons of a Theme	→ Desktop Icon → → Select a theme → → Select an icon → → Sort → → Select a position →
Copy Icons to Another Theme	→ Desktop Icon → → Select a theme → → Select an icon → → Copy → → Copy This, Copy Selected or Copy All → → Select a destination theme → → (→ Select icons → →) • When Copy Selected or Copy All is selected, select YES and press at the end of the procedure.

Move Icons to Another Theme	→ Desktop Icon → → Select a theme → → Select an icon → → Move → → Move This, Move Selected or Move All → → Select a destination theme → → (→ Select icons → →) → YES →
Delete Icons of a Theme	→ Desktop Icon → → Select a theme → → Select an icon → → Delete → → Delete This, Delete selected or Delete All → → (→ Select icons → →) → YES →
Set New Message Indicator in 3D	→ 3D Display Setting → → ON →

Menu Display Settings

Start Here → **Settings** → → **Display** → → **Menu Display Set** →

List View and Details View	→ Menu Display → → List or Detail → • Select View for menus from → Settings →
Set Main Menu Theme	→ Theme → → Select a theme → (→ YES or NO →



Clock, Display & Sounds

Change Icon Design (Original Theme)	<p>⇒ Theme ⇒ ● ⇒ Original Theme ⇒ ●</p> <p>⇒ Select a menu item ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change Main Menu icons to any preferred image. • Press to check current setting.
Change Background (Original Theme)	<p>⇒ Theme ⇒ ● ⇒ Original Theme ⇒ ●</p> <p>⇒ Background Image ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change Main Menu background to any preferred image. • Press to check current setting.
Reset Original Theme Settings	<p>⇒ Theme ⇒ ● ⇒ Original Theme ⇒ ●</p> <p>⇒ Select a menu item ⇒ ⇒ Reset or All reset ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Only available when any Original theme settings have been changed.
Save Last Selected Menu Item to Memory	<p>⇒ Memory Focus ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ●</p>
<p>Start Here ⇒ </p>	
Add a Menu Item to Original Menu	<p>⇒ <Not Recorded> ⇒ ⇒ Select a function ⇒ ● (⇒ YES ⇒ ●)</p>
Change Order of Original Menu Items	<p>⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒ Sort ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a position ⇒ ●</p>

Cancel Original Menu Items	<p>⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒ Release or Release All ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●</p>
Reset Original Menu	<p>⇒ ⇒ Reset Org. Menu ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●</p>

Standby Indicators

Enable Indicator Selector	<p> ⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Display ⇒ ● ⇒ Icons Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The indicators at the top of Display are enabled by pressing ● in Standby. Use to select an indicator and press ● to access the corresponding function.
---------------------------	--

Incoming Call/Message Alerts

Start Here	<p> ⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Incoming Call ⇒ ●</p>
Adjust Ringtone Volume	<p>⇒ Ring Volume ⇒ ● ⇒ Phone, Video Call or Mail ⇒ ● ⇒ to adjust volume ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When Step is set, the ringtone volume increases every three seconds. When Silent is set, no ringtone sounds.



Clock, Display & Sounds

Set a Ringtone	<p>⇨ <i>Select Ring Tone</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ <i>Phone, Video Call or Mail</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ <i>Select Ring Tone</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ● (⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ●) ⇨ Set a ringtone</p>
Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones	<p>⇨ <i>Select Ring Tone</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ <i>Phone, Video Call or Mail</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ <i>Select Ring Tone</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ <i>Random Melody</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Melodies in the selected folder are played at random as ringtones.
Set Ringtone Duration for Incoming Message	<p>⇨ <i>Mail Ring Time</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ <i>Mail</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ ON ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter ringing duration</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When <i>OFF</i> is set, no ringtone sounds and handset does not vibrate when receiving messages.
Set Vibration*	<p>⇨ <i>Vibrator</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ <i>Phone, Video Call or Mail</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a pattern ⇨ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When <i>Melody Linkage</i> is set, handset vibration is linked to the set ringtone melody.
Set Illumination Color	<p>⇨ <i>Illumination</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ <i>Set Color</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ <i>Phone, Video Call or Mail</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a color ⇨ ●</p>
Set Illumination Pattern	<p>⇨ <i>Illumination</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ <i>Set Pattern</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a pattern ⇨ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When <i>Melody Linkage</i> is set, illumination pattern is linked to the set ringtone melody.

Adjust Illumination Color	<p>⇨ <i>Illumination</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ <i>Adjust Color</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ <i>Edit Color Name</i> or <i>Adjust Color Tone</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ Select color ⇨ ● ⇨ Set color name or color ⇨ ●</p>
Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls/New Messages	<p>⇨ <i>Illumination</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ <i>Missed Info</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ ON ⇨ ●</p>
Set an Incoming Call/Message Image	<p>⇨ <i>Select Ring Tone</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ <i>Phone, Video Call or Mail</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ <i>Select Calling Disp.</i> or <i>Select Receiving Disp.</i> ⇨ ● (⇨ <i>My Picture</i> or <i>Videos</i> ⇨ ●) ⇨ Set an image/video</p>
Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls/ Messages	<p>⇨ <i>Disp. Phone Book Image</i> ⇨ ● ⇨ ON ⇨ ●</p>

* When *Vibrator* is not set to *OFF*, be careful not to let handset fall off a desk or slide too close to a stove, etc. when it vibrates.



Answering Incoming Calls

Start Here → **Settings** → ● → **Incoming Call** → ●

Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key

→ **Answer Setting** → ● → **Any Key Answer** → ●

- Answer incoming voice calls by pressing a key from , ● , - , , , , and . The any key answer function is disabled for incoming video calls.

Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key

→ **Answer Setting** → ● → **Quick Silent** → ●

- Mute the ringtone by pressing a key from - , , (for voice calls only), , and or by opening handset.

Manner Mode

Start Here → **Settings** → ● → **Incoming Call** → ● → **Manner Mode Setting** → ●

Set Manner Mode Type

→ **Manner Mode Set** → ● → Select a Manner Mode → ●

- When *Super Silent* is set, all tones emitted through the earpiece are also muted.

Configure Original Manner Mode

→ **Manner Mode Set** → ● → **Original** → ●
● → Set each item →

Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Start

→ **Manner Start Time** → ● → **Start Time Set1** or **Start Time Set2** → → → ●
→ Enter time → ● → → ● → **1 Time, Daily** () or **Select Day** () → ● →
(Select day →) →

Set Time for Auto Manner Mode Release

→ **Manner Release Time** → ● → **Release Time Set1** or **Release Time Set2** → → → ● → Enter time → ● → → ●
→ **1 Time, Daily** () or **Select Day** () → ● → (Select day →) →

Toggle Auto Manner Mode Start and Release On/Off

→ **Manner Start Time** or **Manner Release Time** → ● → Select an item →

- Press to toggle on/off. Settings (e.g., time) are not updated.
- To cancel all settings at once:
→ → **Release All** → ● → **YES** → ●

Checking Call Logs

Start Here → **Settings** → ● → **Incoming Call** → ●

Notify Missed Calls with Tone (When is Pressed)

→ **Info Notice Setting** → ● → **ON** → ●

- Two short beeps sound twice when there are missed calls, and three short beeps sound when there are none.



Clock, Display & Sounds

Change Colors of Names, Phone Numbers and E-mail Addresses in Call and Message Log Windows

- ⇒ *Disp. Call/Receive No.* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ●
- Press to toggle the color palette between 16 colors and 256 colors.
- To reset the color settings, press .

Sounds

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ●

Set Key Sound Off

- ⇒ *Keypad Sound* ⇒ ● ⇒ **OFF** ⇒ ●
- Sound when tapping Display is also turned off.

Set to Play Charging Start/End Tones

- ⇒ *Charge Sound* ⇒ ● ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ●

Start Here ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Voice Announce** ⇒ ●

Record Sound to Set as Ringtone or Outgoing Message

- ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ● ⇒
- Record sound (for about 15 seconds)
- Press ● to stop recording.

Play Recorded Sound

- ⇒ Select an item with ★ ⇒ ●

Delete Recorded Sound

- ⇒ Select an item with ★ ⇒ ⇒ **Erase** ⇒ ● ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ●

Earphone-Microphone

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ●

Audio Output

- ⇒ *External Connection* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Headset Usage Setting* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Headset+speaker* or *Headset Only* ⇒ ●

Microphone Setting

- ⇒ *External Connection* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Headset Mic. Setting* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Built-in Microphone* or *Headset Microphone* ⇒ ●

Answer Calls Automatically

- ⇒ *External Connection* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Auto Answer Setting* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Phone* or *Video Call* ⇒ ● ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter ring time

Save a Phone Number to Dial with an Earphone-Microphone

- ⇒ *Dialing* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Headset SW to Dial* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Voice Call* ⇒ ● ⇒ Search Phone Book ⇒ Select an entry ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a phone number ⇒ ●



Phone Book

Set Preferred Search Method	[Phone Book Search] window (P. 2-22) → Select a search method → → OK → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To cancel the preferred search method, press in Phone Book Search window, select the search method with ★, and then press .
Change Group Name	[Phone Book Entry List] (P. 2-22) → → Group Setting → ● → Select a group → ● → Edit group name → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The name remains the same only for <i>No Group</i>.
Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared	→ Tools → ● → Forwarding Image → ● → OFF → ●

S! Addressbook Back-up

Start Here → **Tools** → ● → **S! Addressbook Back-up** → ●

Set Auto Synchronize	→ Auto Sync Settings → ● → ON/OFF → ● → ON → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → Select synchronize timing → ● (→ Set synchronize cycle and day) → Select synchronize type → ● → YES → ● (twice)
----------------------	---

Set Auto Synchronize Off	→ Auto Sync Settings → ● → ON/OFF → ● → OFF → ●
Check Auto Synchronize Settings	→ Auto Sync Settings → ● → Confirm Settings → ●

Outgoing Calls

Start Here → **Settings** → ● → **Dialing** → ●

Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers	→ Prefix Setting → ● → Select an item → → Enter name → ● → Enter prefix numbers → ●
Save Touch Tones	→ Pause Dial → ● → → Enter touch tone numbers → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press and hold to enter "p" (Pause).
Set Numbers after "*" as Sub Address	→ Sub-address Setting → ● → ON → ●



International Calls

Start Here → **Settings** → ● → **Dialing** → ● → **Int'l Dial Assistance** → ●

Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with "+"	<p>→ Auto Int'l Call Set. → ● → ON → ●</p> <p>→ Select a country code → ● → Select an international access code → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When OFF is set, the international access code is not entered when you press and hold . • Select an international access code you set in IDD Prefix Setting.
Change a Country Code	<p>→ Country Code Setting → ● → Select an item → → Enter country name → ● → Enter country code → ●</p>
Save an International Access Code	<p>→ IDD Prefix Setting → ● → Select an item → → Enter international access name → ● → Enter international access code → ●</p>

Call Settings

Start Here → **Settings** → ● → **Talk** → ●

Set Reconnection Tone	<p>→ Reconnect Signal → ● → High Tone or Low Tone → ●</p>
-----------------------	--

Set Noise Reduction	<p>→ Noise Reduction → ● → ON → ●</p>
Set Weak Signal Alarm	<p>→ Quality Alarm → ● → High Tone or Low Tone → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Alarm may not sound before call is disconnected, if signal strength drops suddenly.
Set Clarity of Other Party Voice	<p>→ Hyper Clear Voice → ● → High, Low or OFF → ●</p>
Automatically Record During Voice Call	<p>→ Auto Voice Memo → ● → ON → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Record latest 60 seconds of call (two recordings).
Change Color of Illumination While Calling	<p>→ Illumination in Talk → ● → Select a pattern → ●</p>
Set Outgoing Message while Call is on Hold	<p>→ Set Hold Tone → ● → On Hold Tone → ● → Select a hold tone → ● (→ ●)</p>
Set Closing Sound Off	<p>→ Setting When Folded → ● → No Tone → ●</p>
Continue Call With Handset Closed	<p>→ Setting When Folded → ● → Continue Talking → ●</p>
End Call By Closing Handset	<p>→ Setting When Folded → ● → End the Call → ●</p>



Call Costs

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Call Time/Charge** ⇒

Set Auto Reset of Total Call Cost	<p>⇒ Auto Reset Total Cost ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ Auto Reset ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ (⇒ Enter PIN2 ⇒)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When ON is set, the total call cost indication is automatically reset to zero at twelve midnight on the first day of each month.
Set a Maximum Call Cost Limit*	<p>⇒ Set Max Cost Limit ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ Enter cost limit ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ Set alarm tone ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ to adjust volume ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ Enter PIN2 ⇒ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A call ends automatically and appears in Display when the total call cost exceeds the set maximum limit. When the set total call cost limit has been reached, all outgoing calls are disabled. To enable outgoing calls, set the maximum call cost limit to 0: ⇒ Set Max Cost Limit ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ (twice) ⇒ ⇒ Enter PIN2 ⇒

* Cost display may not be available depending on your subscription. If unavailable, you will also be unable to set a cost limit.

Video Calls

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Video Call** ⇒

Set Outgoing Image during Video Calls	<p>⇒ Select Image ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒ Pre-installed or Original ⇒ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To set an image other than the preinstalled image: ⇒ Original ⇒ ⇒ Change Setting ⇒ ⇒ Set an image
Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails	<p>⇒ Auto Redial as Voice ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒ </p>
Set an Image to Appear in Main Window	<p>⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ⇒ Main Display ⇒ ⇒ Other Side or My Side ⇒ </p>
Reverse Front Camera Image	<p>⇒ Display Setting ⇒ ⇒ Front Camera Reverse ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒ </p>
Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls	<p>⇒ Hands-free Switch ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒ </p>



Global Roaming

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Int'l Roaming Set** ⇒ ●

Show Operator Name While Roaming

⇒ **Display Operator Name** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Display ON** ⇒ ●

<p>Set Operator</p>	<p>⇒ NW Search Mode ⇒ ● ⇒ Manual ⇒ ●</p> <p>⇒ Select an operator ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When <i>Auto</i> is set, an available operator is set automatically. • Use this procedure when handset is out of the service area of the currently used operator.
<p>Search Available Operator</p>	<p>⇒ NW Search Mode ⇒ ● ⇒ Network Re-search ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an operator ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Available when <i>NW Search Mode</i> is set to <i>Manual</i>.
<p>Set Priority for Operators</p>	<p>⇒ PLMN Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an operator ⇒  ⇒ Change Priority ⇒ ●</p> <p>⇒ Select a position on the priority list ⇒ ● ⇒  ⇒ YES ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When <i>Auto</i> is set under <i>NW Search Mode</i>, you are automatically connected to the highest priority operator among available operators.
<p>Change Network</p>	<p>⇒ Select Network ⇒ ● ⇒ AUTO, 3G or GSM/GPRS ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set to <i>AUTO</i> or network used in current location.



S! Mail Settings

Start Here ⇒ Mail Setting ⇒ ●

Edit Header/Signature	⇒ Header/Signature ⇒ ● ⇒ Edit Header or Edit Signature ⇒ ● (twice) ⇒ Edit header/signature ⇒
Insert Header/Signature Automatically	⇒ Header/Signature ⇒ ● ⇒ Insert Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Header or Signature ⇒ ● ⇒
Request Delivery Report	⇒ S! Mail Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Delivery Report ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delivery Report arrives when recipient has received your S! Mail. <i>S! Mail Report</i> appears in Subject field of Delivery Report.

SMS Settings

Start Here ⇒ Mail Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ SMS Settings ⇒ ●

Request Delivery Report	⇒ SMS Report Request ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delivery Report arrives when recipient has received your SMS message. <i>SMS Report</i> appears in Subject field of Delivery Report.
-------------------------	---

Set Server Storage Period of SMS Messages	⇒ SMS Validity Period ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a period ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When <i>None</i> is set, SMS messages you send are not stored on the server.
Set SMS Input Language	⇒ SMS Input Character ⇒ ● ⇒ Japanese (70char.) or English(160char.) ⇒ ●

Incoming Message Settings

Start Here ⇒ Mail Setting ⇒ ●

Customize E-mail Address	⇒ Custom Mail Address ⇒ ● ⇒ Follow onscreen instructions
Do Not Show Emotion Indicators	⇒ Emotion/Keyword ⇒ ● ⇒ Uncheck <i>Disp. Emotion</i> ⇒
Show Keyword Indicators	⇒ Emotion/Keyword ⇒ ● ⇒ Put a checkmark to <i>Disp. Keyword</i> ⇒ Select a keyword entry field ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter keyword ⇒ ● ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When handset receives an S! Mail containing the specified keyword, a keyword indicator - appears. • In case a message contains both the content that matches an emotion indicator (P. 5-6) and a specified keyword, the keyword indicator takes priority.



Delete Keywords	<p>⇒ <i>Emotion/Keyword</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a keyword ⇒ ⇒ <i>Delete Keyword</i> or <i>Delete All Keyword</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● ⇒ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To delete all keywords, uncheck <i>Disp. Keyword</i>.
Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation	<p>⇒ <i>Receiving Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Alarm Preferred</i> or <i>Operation Preferred</i> ⇒ ●</p>
Set Whether to Read Out Received Messages	<p>⇒ <i>Read Out Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Read Out Received Mail</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mail is only read out while in Japanese Language Mode.
Set Voice to Read Out Messages	<p>⇒ <i>Read Out Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Select Voice</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a voice type ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mail is only read out while in Japanese Language Mode.
Set Manual Receive	<p>⇒ <i>S! Mail Settings</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Message Download</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Manual</i> ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The entire text is receivable by user operation.

Reply Settings

Quote Message Marks	<p> ⇒ <i>Mail Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Header/Signature</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Edit Quotation Marks</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Edit quotation mark ⇒ ●</p>
---------------------	---

Message Window/Messaging Settings

Start Here ⇒ *Mail Setting* ⇒ ●

Set Message List View	<p>⇒ <i>Mail List Disp.</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>2 Lines, 1 Line</i> or <i>1 Line+Body</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Subject, Name</i> or <i>Address</i> ⇒ ●</p>
Set Auto-Play for Melody Attachments	<p>⇒ <i>Start Attachment (auto)</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Automatic play only for received mail.
Set Scroll Unit	<p>⇒ <i>Scroll</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>1 Line, 3 Lines</i> or <i>5 Lines</i> ⇒ ●</p>
Set Font Size	<p>⇒ <i>Font Size</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ●</p>
Check Mail Settings	<p>⇒ <i>Check Settings</i> ⇒ ●</p>
Restore to Default Settings	<p>⇒ <i>Reset</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●</p>



SMS Server Settings

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Connection Settings**
 ⇒ ● ⇒ **SMS Center Selection** ⇒ ●

Change SMS Center Address	⇒ 819066519300 ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter SMS Center address ⇒ ● ⇒ International or Unknown ⇒ ● • Address is 819066519300 by default. SMS may become unavailable if Center address is changed.
Reset to SoftBank SMS Center Address	⇒ Reset ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●



Internet

Start Here for Yahoo! Keitai Press and hold → **Browser Settings** → ●

Start Here for PC Site Browser Press and hold → **PC Site Browser** → ● → **PC Site Brw. Settings** → ●

Set Scroll Unit/Speed	→ <i>Scroll</i> → ● → <i>Whole Page, Half Page</i> or <i>Single Line</i> → ●
Set Whether to Show Images or Play Melodies	→ <i>Downloads</i> → ● → <i>Display Images</i> or <i>Play Sounds</i> → ● → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> → ●
Clear Cache	→ <i>Memory Manager</i> → ● → <i>Delete Cache</i> → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → <i>YES</i> → ●
Delete Cookies	→ <i>Memory Manager</i> → ● → <i>Delete Cookies</i> → ● → <i>YES</i> → ●
Initialize Memory Status of Internet	→ <i>Initialized Browser</i> → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → <i>YES</i> → ●
Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number	→ <i>Security</i> → ● → <i>Manufacture Number</i> → ● → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> → ●
Set Whether to Send Referer	→ <i>Security</i> → ● → <i>Send Referer</i> → ● → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> → ●

Enable/Disable Cookies	→ <i>Security</i> → ● → <i>Cookie Settings</i> → ● → Select an option → ●
Set Whether to Activate Scripts	→ <i>Security</i> → ● → <i>Script Settings</i> → ● → Select an option → ●
Check Internet Settings	→ <i>Check Settings</i> or <i>Check PC Site Brw. Set</i> → ●
Reset Internet Settings	→ <i>Reset</i> or <i>Reset PC Site Brw. Set</i> → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → <i>YES</i> → ●

Yahoo! Keitai

Start Here Press and hold → **Browser Settings** → ●

Set Font Size	→ <i>Font Size</i> → ● → Select a size → ●
Set Flash® Sound On/Off	→ <i>Flash Sound Effect</i> → ● → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> → ●



PC Site Browser

Start Here Press and hold  ⇒ **PC Site Browser** ⇒ ● ⇒
PC Site Brw. Settings ⇒ ●

Do Not Show Alert When Activating PC Site Browser & Switching Browsers	⇒ Warning Messages ⇒ ● ⇒ OFF ⇒ ●
Set Page Layout	⇒ Display Mode Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ PC Screen or Small Screen ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ●



Channel List

Start Here → TV → ● → Channel List → ●

Change Title of Channel List	→ Select a channel list → → Edit Title → ● → Edit title → ●
Delete a Channel List	→ Select a channel list → → Delete This → ● → YES → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The currently used channel list cannot be deleted.
Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers	→ Select a channel list → → → Remote Control No. → ● → Select a remote control number → ● → Select a channel → ● → Repeat the same step → → YES → ●
Delete a Channel	→ Select a channel list → → Select a channel → → Delete This → ● → YES → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Delete a channel from any channel list except for the currently used list.

Image & Sound

Start Here → TV → ● → User Settings → ●

Set Subtitle Display	→ Subtitles → ● → ON (Wide:Bottom), ON (Wide:Top) or OFF → ●
Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View	→ Icon Always Show → ● → ON or OFF → ●
Save Battery by Dimming Backlight	→ TV Power Saving → ● → YES → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Following these steps when TV Power Saving is on will cancel TV Power Saving.
Keep Backlight On When Viewing TV	→ Display Light → ● → Constant Light → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> TV Power Saving must be off to set Display Light.
Set Backlight Duration for Viewing TV	→ Display Light → ● → Lighting Duration → ● → Enter lighting time <ul style="list-style-type: none"> TV Power Saving must be off to set Display Light.
Set Sound Effects	→ TV Effect → ● → Sound Effect → ● → Select an effect → ●
Set Visual Image Effects	→ TV Effect → ● → Visual Image Effect → ● → Select an effect → ●



Set TV to Pause or Continue for Incoming Calls (Time Shift Playback)	⇒ <i>Time Shift Setup</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Auto ON</i> or <i>Auto OFF</i> ⇒ ●
--	---

Data Broadcasts

Start Here  ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ● ⇒ **User Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Data BC Settings** ⇒ ●

Set Whether to Show Images in Pages Accessed from Data Broadcasts	⇒ <i>Set Image Disp.</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ●
Enable/Disable Sound Effects of Data Broadcasts	⇒ <i>Sound Effect</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ●
Show Confirmation Window Again	⇒ <i>Reset Disp. Set.</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Once you select <i>YES</i> (By default) in a confirmation window for accessing a web page from Data Broadcast, the window no longer appears. Use this procedure to set the window to reappear.

Recording Programs

Continue/End Recording at Low Battery	 ⇒ TV ⇒ ● ⇒ User Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Rec. While Low Battery</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ●
---------------------------------------	---

Other Settings

Start Here  ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ● ⇒ **User Settings** ⇒ ●

Check TV Settings	⇒ <i>Check TV Settings</i> ⇒ ●
Reset Channel Settings	⇒ <i>Reset Channel Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ ●
Clear Data Broadcast Memory	⇒ <i>Reset Storage Area</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an affiliated station ⇒  ⇒ <i>Delete This</i> or <i>Delete All</i> ⇒ ● (⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ●) ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ ●
Reset TV Settings	⇒ <i>Reset TV Settings</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ ●



Camera/Video Settings

Set Shutter Sound	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-6)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-9) → → Shutter Sound → ● → Select a shutter sound → ●
Set Level of Smile for Smile Mode	[Smile Mode Viewfinder] (P. 7-12) → → Camera Settings → ● → Smile Level → ● → Select a level → ●
Set Display for Landscape View Shooting	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-6)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-9) → → Icon Always Show → ● → ON or OFF → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Below icons do not appear if set to OFF. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Photo Viewfinder <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Focus Frame, Auto Timer, Storage Capacity ● For Video Viewfinder or Shooting window <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Auto Timer, Storage Capacity, Recording Status, Recording Time (remaining)
Set Interval for Continuous Shooting	[Continuous Shooting Viewfinder] (P. 7-12) → → Interval/Number → ● → Shot Interval → ● → 0.5 Seconds , 1.0 Seconds or 2.0 Seconds → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Shot Interval is available when CHG Camera-mode (P. 7-6) is set to A-Continuous Mode.

Set Number of Shots for Continuous Shooting	[Continuous Shooting Viewfinder] (P. 7-12) → → Interval/Number → ● → Shot Number → ● → Enter Shot Number → ●
---	---

File Storage

Set Storage Location for Still Images/Videos	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-6)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-9) → → Select to Save → ● → Phone or microSD → ● → Select a folder → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To save videos on memory card, select a folder of Inbox.
--	---



Playback Window

Change Design of Playback Window	[Music Playback] window (P. 9-5) → → Action Setting → ● → Change Skin → ● → Select a design → ●
Set Image Display Size	[Video Playback] window (P. 9-5) → → Action Setting → ● → Set Image Disp. → ● → Normal or Fit in Display → ● • Available when playing in Normal Screen mode.

When Running S! Appli

Start Here → **S! Appli** → ● → **Settings** → ●

Set Sound Volume	→ Sound/Vib Settings → ● → Volume → ● → to adjust volume → ●
Set Vibration	→ Sound/Vib Settings → ● → Vibration → ● → ON or OFF → ●
Set Backlight	→ Backlight Settings → ● → Switch ON/OFF → ● → Always ON, Always OFF or Link To Phone Set. → ●
Set Blinking of Backlight	→ Backlight Settings → ● → Blink → ● → ON or OFF → ●

Start Here → **S! Appli** → ● → **S! Appli List** → ●

Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Connect to Network	→ Select an S! Appli → → Security Settings → ● → Net Access → ● → All Permit, Prompt at 1st only, Prompt each time or Disable → ●
Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information	→ Select an S! Appli → → Security Settings → ● → Write/Del User Data → ● → All Permit, Prompt at 1st only, Prompt each time or Disable → ●
Reset Security Settings of S! Appli	→ Select an S! Appli → → Security Settings → ● → Reset Security Set. → ● → YES → ●

S! Appli

Start Here → **S! Appli** → ● → **Settings** → ●

Reset S! Appli Settings	→ Reset → ● → Set to Default → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → YES → ●
Delete All S! Appli	→ Reset → ● → Delete All S! App → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → YES → ●



Mobile Widget

Start Here  → **Entertainment** → ● → **Mobile Widget**
 → ● → **Settings** → ●

Check Auto Synchronize Settings	→ Auto Refresh → ● → ON or OFF → ●
Set Whether to Automatically Transmit When Abroad	→ Auto Roaming → ● → ON or OFF → ●
Delete All Widgets from Desktop Page	→ Delete Content → ● → Select a Desktop page → ● → YES → ●
Set Whether to Use Cookies	→ Cookies → ● → ON or OFF → ●
Delete Cookies	→ Delete Cookies → ● → YES → ●
Set Whether to Use Mobile Widget	→ Standby Disp. Set. → ● → ON or OFF → ●

S! Quick News

Start Here  → **Entertainment** → ● → **S! Quick News**
 → ● → **Settings** → ●

Set Automatic Updates for S! Quick News	→ Auto Refresh → ● → Select an item → ● → Select update interval, ON or OFF → ● (twice)
Hide S! Quick News in Standby	→ Standby Settings → ● → Standby Disp. Set. → ● → OFF → ● (twice)
Set Ticker Speed	→ Standby Settings → ● → Speed Settings → ● → Fast , Normal or Slow → ● (twice)
Set Information to appear in S! Quick News	→ Standby Settings → ● → Unread & Read Set. → ● → Unread Only or Unread & Read → ● (twice)
Hide S! Quick News Images	→ Set Image Disp. → ● → OFF → ● (twice)
Reset S! Quick News Registered Contents	→ Del. Quick News → ● → YES → ● (twice) → Enter Security Code → ● (three times)



S! Info Channel

Start Here  → **Entertainment** → ● → **S! Info Ch./Weather** → ● → **Settings** → ●

Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information	→ S! Information Notif. → ● → ON or OFF → ●
Set Font Size for Web Pages	→ Font Size → ● → Select font size → ●

Weather Indicators

Start Here  → **Entertainment** → ● → **S! Info Ch./Weather** → ● → **Weather Indicator** → ● → **Settings** → ●

Set Whether to Automatically Update Weather Information	→ Weather Update → ● → ON or OFF → ● (→ YES → ●)
Set Whether to Display Weather Indicators in Standby	→ Standby Setting → ● → ON or OFF → ●

Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information	→ Weather Notif. → ● → ON or OFF → ●
--	---



Other Settings

Text Entry

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ●
 ⇒ **Character Input Set** ⇒ ●

Set Text Input Method	⇒ Input Mode ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an input method ⇒ ●
Set Word Prediction	⇒ Prediction ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ●
Set to Show T9 Suggestion Words in Kanji or Hiragana	⇒ T9 Change Mode ⇒ ● ⇒ T9 Kanji Change Mode or T9 Kana Change Mode ⇒ ●
Clear Learning History	⇒ Clear Learned ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ T9/Expect Words/Pic. or Kana/Kanji Change/Face ⇒ ●
Change Font Size	⇒ CHG Input Size ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ●
Set Auto Cursor Movement in 5-Touch Mode	⇒ Auto Cursor ⇒ ● ⇒ Fast, Normal, Slow or OFF ⇒ ●

Shortcut Key

⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other Setting** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Shortcut-key Setting** ⇒ ● ⇒
 Select a function ⇒ ● ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ●
 • To return to original settings, press , select **Reset Shortcut-key**, and press ●.

Neuropointer

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ●
 ⇒ **Neuropointer** ⇒ ●

Set Neuropointer On/Off	⇒ Pointer ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ●
Neuropointer Speed (Simple Setting)	⇒ Speed ⇒ ● ⇒ Simple ⇒ ● ⇒ Normal or High ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
Neuropointer Speed (Detailed Setting)	⇒ Speed ⇒ ● ⇒ Detail ⇒ ● ⇒ Select window to set ⇒ ● ⇒ Set speed ⇒ OK ⇒ ●
Reset Neuropointer Speed	⇒ Speed ⇒ ● ⇒ Reset ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
Adjust Neuropointer Slide Range	⇒ Slide ⇒ ● ⇒ Adjust ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●



Other Settings

Reset Neuropointer Slide Range	⇒ <i>Slide</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Reset</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ ●
Set Neuropointer Icon Design	⇒ <i>Pointer Icon Setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select icon design ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ ●

Touch Panel

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ●
 ⇒ **Touch Panel Setting** ⇒ ●

Set Touch Panel On/Off for Each Style	⇒ <i>Touch Style, Share Style</i> or <i>Communication Style</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ●
Set Vibrator Operation during Touch Operation	⇒ <i>Vibrator</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ●

Share Style

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Display** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Share Style Settings** ⇒ ●

Wallpaper	⇒ <i>W-stand-by Display</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>My Picture</i> or <i>Videos</i> (or <i>Same as Length</i>) ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image/video (Select a layout ⇒ ● (twice)) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To set same Standby image as Communication Style, set to <i>Same as Length</i>.
Show Calendar in Standby	⇒ <i>W-stand-by Display</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Calendar</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Background</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an image ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a layout ⇒ ● (twice) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To not show image for calendar, set to <i>No Background</i>.
Set Random Display of Images	⇒ <i>W-stand-by Display</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Random Display</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a layout ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Image switches at random when handset is changed to Share Style or returns to Standby.
Clock Size	⇒ <i>Clock Size</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select size ⇒ ●



Other Settings

Style Change

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Style Change Setting** ⇒

Set to Answer Calls By Opening Handset	⇒ Auto-ans at Style-chg ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Choose ON to answer calls by opening to Communication Style.
Set Sound at Style Change	⇒ Style-chg Sound ⇒ ⇒ Touch Style, Share Style or Communication Style ⇒ ⇒ Melody ⇒ ⇒ Select a sound ⇒ ⇒ Ring Time ⇒ ⇒ Select time sound emitted ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set to OFF to turn off sound.
Set Flashing Color for Style Change Illumination	⇒ Style-chg Illumination ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒ ⇒ Set Color ⇒ ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ⇒ Set Pattern ⇒ ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒

Osaifu-Keitai®

Set Illumination for IC Card	⇒ Tools ⇒ ⇒ Osaifu-Keitai ⇒ ⇒ IC Card Illumination ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒
Delete all Lifestyle-Appli	⇒ S! Appli ⇒ ⇒ Settings ⇒ ⇒ Reset ⇒ ⇒ Delete All LifeApp ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒
Set Whether to Enable Opening from Reader/Writer	⇒ Tools ⇒ ⇒ Osaifu-Keitai ⇒ ⇒ Interface Settings ⇒ ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ Browser ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒

S! GPS Navi

Start Here ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **S! GPS Navi** ⇒ ⇒ **NAVI Settings** ⇒

Set Default Navi Appli	⇒ Map Setting ⇒ ⇒ Select Navi Appli ⇒ ⇒ Select a Navi Appli ⇒
Begin Positioning Before/After Activating Map	⇒ Map Setting ⇒ ⇒ Map Activate Setting ⇒ ⇒ After Positioning or Before Positioning ⇒



Other Settings

Save Map URL	⇒ Map URL Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ <Not Recorded> ⇒ [Enter] ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ Map URL Name ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter URL name ⇒ ● ⇒ Map URL ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter URL ⇒ ● ⇒ [Enter]
Edit URL Name	⇒ Map URL Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a map URL ⇒ [Enter] ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ Select name ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter name ⇒ ● ⇒ Select URL ⇒ ● ⇒ Edit URL ⇒ ● ⇒ [Enter] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The map URL set by default cannot be edited.
Delete Map URL	⇒ Map URL Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a map URL ⇒ [F] ⇒ Delete ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The map URL set by default cannot be deleted.
Set Map URL	⇒ Map URL Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a map URL ⇒ ●
Set Location Information Send Method	⇒ Send Location Info ⇒ ● ⇒ Confirm, Send or Not Send ⇒ ●

Bluetooth®

Start Here [MENU] ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Bluetooth** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Bluetooth Settings** ⇒ ●

Set Detection Time for Device	⇒ Time-out to Search ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter search time
Set Whether to Send Ring Tone for Voice Call, Video Call to Headset or Handsfree Device	⇒ Forward Ring Tone ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ring tone will also sound from handset if <i>Headset Usage Setting</i> is set to <i>Headset+speaker</i> and <i>Forward Ring Tone</i> is set to <i>OFF</i>.
Set Whether to Enable Calling from External Device	⇒ Dial From Other Device ⇒ ● ⇒ Valid or Invalid ⇒ ●
Check Handset Bluetooth® Information	⇒ Bluetooth Info ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press [Enter] to change name of added device.



Other Settings

WLAN

Start Here → **Settings** → ● → **WLAN Setting** → ●

Show Confirmation Before Switching to 3G	→ WLAN/3G Change Setting → ● → Confirm Mode or Auto Mode → ● • Unavailable when <i>ON/OFF</i> for <i>WLAN Setting</i> is set to <i>OFF</i> .
Reset WLAN Setting	→ Reset WLAN Setting → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → YES → ●

Start Here → **Settings** → ● → **WLAN Setting** → ● → **Manual Setup** → ● → **Profile Setting** → ● → Select a profile → ●

Change Profile Name*	→ Set Profile Name → ● → Enter profile name → ● → (twice)
Set ESSID*	→ WLAN Detail Setting → ● → ESSID Setting → ● → Enter ESSID → ● → (three times) • ESSID is an ID for preventing unintended network crossing. Specify the same setting as for the access point.
Select Wireless Mode Setting*	→ WLAN Detail Setting → ● → Radio Mode Setting → ● → AUTO(802.11b/g) or 802.11b → ● → (three times)

Set IP Address*	→ IP Setting → ● → IP Address Setting → ● → Automatic Setup or Manual Setup → ● (→ IP Address , Subnet Mask and Default Gateway → ● → Enter setting values → ●) → (three times)
Set DNS Server*	→ IP Setting → ● → DNS Setting → ● → Automatic Setup or Manual Setup → ● (→ Primary DNS and Secondary DNS → ● → Enter setting values → ● → (three times)
Use HTTP Proxy Server*	→ HTTP Proxy Setting → ● → ON → ● → Server Address , Port Number (HTTP) , Port Number (SSL) and Unset Proxy Address → ● → Enter setting values → ● → (three times) • Available when <i>WLAN Access Mode</i> is set to <i>Direct Access</i> .
Set Security Method*	→ Set Security Method → ● → None , WEP , WPA/WPA2-PSK or WPA2-PSK → ● (→ Enter or select setting values → ●) → (twice)



Other Settings

Set to Use Public Wireless LAN*	<p>⇒ Public WLAN Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● ⇒ ID and Password ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter ID and password ⇒ ● ⇒ [OK] (three times)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When using a profile other than <i>BB モバイルポイント</i>, ID and password entry may be required even if an ID and password are already set. Does not guarantee connection to all public WLAN services.
Set Access Mode*	<p>⇒ WLAN Access Mode ⇒ ● ⇒ Keitai Wi-Fi or Direct Access ⇒ ● ⇒ [OK] (twice)</p>

* After setting, in Manual Setup window (P. 13-13), press [OK] (Finish).

Resetting Handset

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ●

Reset All Settings to Default	<p>⇒ Reset Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●</p>
Initialize Handset to Default Status	<p>⇒ Initialize ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the initialization is completed, handset automatically shuts down and restarts. When handset is initialized, all data downloaded and saved on handset are deleted and cannot be restored. Your Security Code will also be reset to default. Retrieve network information to use Keitai Wi-Fi service again (P. 1-26).

Appendix



Multitask Combinations	15-2
Software Update	15-4
Updating Software.....	15-4
Troubleshooting	15-6
Text Entry Key Assignments	15-10
In 5-touch Mode.....	15-10
In 2-touch Mode.....	15-11
In T9 Input Mode.....	15-12
Kuten Code List	15-13
Weather Indicators	15-19
Menu List	15-20
Communication Style	15-20
Share Style	15-36
Touch Style	15-37
Specifications	15-38
Main Specifications	15-38
Handset Materials	15-39
Maximum Number of Storable Items.....	15-40
Memory Card Folders & Files	15-41
Index	15-43
Warranty & After Sales Service	15-56
Warranty.....	15-56
After Sales Service	15-56
Customer Service	15-57



Multitask Combinations

The following table shows combinations of functions that can be used simultaneously to multitask.

● The following indications may not apply depending on the function status and combination.

Function Currently Active Function	Mail	Yahoo!	S! Appli	Settings/ Optional Services	Data Folder	Tools	Phone Book	Own Data	Camera	TV	Music	Original Menu	Group
Mail	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Mail Group
Yahoo!	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Yahoo! Group
S! Appli	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	S! Appli Group
Settings/Optional Services	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Settings Group
Data Folder	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Data Folder
Tools	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Tools Group
Phone Book	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Own Data	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Camera	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	



Multitask Combinations

Function Currently Active Function	Mail	Yahoo!	S! Appli	Settings/ Optional Services	Data Folder	Tools	Phone Book	Own Data	Camera	TV	Music	Original Menu	Group	
TV 	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	TV & Music Group
Music 	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	
During a Voice Call 	○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	Voice Call	
During a Video Call 	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	Video Call	
During Packet Transmission with a PC Connected 	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	External Connection

- : Can be activated.
- × : Cannot be activated.



Software Update

Check if software on handset needs to be updated, and update it through the network if necessary.

- Before updating software, turn off handset and restart it to make sure that all handset functions have ended.
- Disconnect the USB cable from handset. The software update, if it is done with the USB cable connected, may not be properly completed.
- No transmission fees apply to check or update software.
- Updating software may take 30 minutes or so. Wait for the software update to finish before using handset.
- Make sure battery is sufficiently charged before updating software.
- Update software in a location of good signal reception. Do not change locations while updating software.
- Other handset functions are available once the software update is completed.
- Data saved on handset is retained when you update software. However, data may be lost depending on the handset condition (e.g. a malfunction). We recommend that you make backups of important data (though it may be impossible to back up some downloaded data) before updating software. SoftBank is not liable for any data loss.

- Never remove battery or USIM Card or turn off handset while updating software.
- If software update fails, handset may become inoperable. If this happens, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 15-57).

Updating Software

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Software Update** ⇒
- 2 **Software Update** ⇒



- 3 Follow onscreen instructions

After Software is Updated

After update, handset restarts and update status appears.



Update Status

Note

- If handset does not restart after updating, remove and reinsert Battery, and turn handset on again. If handset still does not restart, call Softbank Mobile Customer Center (P. 15-57).



Software Update

Checking Update Results

- 1  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Software Update** ⇒ 
- 2 **Update Result** ⇒ 

Using Regular Updates

A confirmation for software update appears at the scheduled time. Press  or leave handset for a while to start automatic software update.

- If other functions are being used at the scheduled time, software update cannot start. End all functions to open the software update confirmation window (if you keep using other functions for more than ten minutes after a scheduled time, software update is canceled).



Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot turn on handset.	Is battery properly installed?	P. 1-22
	Is battery exhausted?	P. 1-30
Handset is slow to turn on.	It takes time if there are large amounts of data (e.g., Phone Book entries) saved on handset.	-
Cannot charge battery. Charging Indicator does not light up.	Is battery properly installed?	P. 1-22
	Is AC Charger plugged into an outlet properly?	P. 1-24
	Is the connector of AC Charger correctly inserted into handset?	
	Is AC Charger the specified ZTDAA1? Battery may not charge properly with non-specified charger.	-
Battery drains too fast.	Battery service life may be over. Battery lifespan may be shortened by environmental factors.	P. 1-22, P. 14-5
	Battery operation time will vary depending on handset operations or settings.	
Cannot make calls.	Is handset out of service area or in a location with a weak signal?	-
	Is a maximum call cost limit set?	P. 14-13

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot make calls using Keypad.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4
	Is <i>Dial/Sending Mail</i> specified to be locked in Original (Dial) Lock mode?	P. 4-3
	Is <i>Restrict Dialing</i> set?	P. 2-25
A message informs you the number is not in service.	Did you include the area code when dialing a phone number?	-
Busy tone always sounds for outgoing call.	Does <i>Network is busy at this moment Please try again later</i> appear in Display?	-
<i>Network is busy at this moment Please try again later</i> appears.	Voice call/packet transmission network may be experiencing heavy traffic or technical difficulties. Try again later. Emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) are still available.	-
Cannot receive calls. Incoming ringtone does not sound.	Is handset in <i>Emission OFF Mode</i> ?	P. 4-6
	Is handset in Manner Mode?	P. 1-28
	Is <i>Ring Volume</i> set to <i>Silent</i> ?	P. 14-7
Speaker volume is low (ringtone, warning tone, etc.).	Does this occur immediately after sound is emitted from Earpiece? Since Earpiece also acts as Speaker, sound from Speaker is controlled.	-



Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
The other party's voice is difficult to hear.	Is the earpiece properly placed against your ear?	-
	Is anything obstructing the speaker if it is in handsfree mode?	-
	Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted?	P. 3-3, P. 3-9
The other party's voice is too loud.	Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted?	P. 3-3, P. 3-9
Handset response to key presses is slow.	This may occur when there are large amounts of data saved on handset, or when large amounts of data are being transferred between handset and memory card.	-
Cannot hear key operation tones.	Is Keypad Sound set to OFF ?	P. 14-10
	Is handset in Manner Mode?	P. 1-28
Side Keys and Touch Panel are inoperable in Touch Style.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Display is blank.	Is Power Saver Mode activated?	P. 14-5
	If handset is left in a very hot place, it may automatically shut down. If this happens, move handset to a location at an appropriate temperature (5 to 35 °C) and wait for a while until the keys become operable again.	-
Display is hard to see.	Is Brightness under Backlight set to lower level?	P. 14-5
	Is ECO Mode activated?	P. 1-32
	Is Privacy Angle set to ON ?	P. 14-5
Display backlight does not light.	Is Lighting under Backlight set to OFF ?	P. 14-5
Display Backlight is sometimes bright, sometimes dim.	Is Brightness under Backlight set to ON ? Light Sensor detects the surrounding brightness and automatically adjusts the Display Backlight brightness.	P. 14-5
Message appears when opening an image, video or song file.	The image, video or song is unavailable with the function being used when any of the following messages appear. Not available and No preview data	-



Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
appears instead of an image or preview.	The image file may be corrupted.	-
Images shot with handset camera flicker.	When shooting images indoors, flicker may occur due to fluorescent lighting, etc. Changing the <i>Flicker</i> setting may help reduce flicker.	P. 7-16
Images/videos shot on handset are too bright.	Were the still images or videos shot with <i>Flicker</i> not set to <i>Auto</i> ? Set <i>Flicker</i> to <i>Auto</i> .	P. 7-16
Images/videos shot on handset are blurred.	Select a Photo Mode suited to the subject or scene.	P. 7-6, P. 7-9
Cannot watch TV.	Is handset out of the digital terrestrial broadcast service area or in a location with a weak signal?	-
	Are the channel settings done?	P. 8-3
Cannot use S! Appli.	Has different USIM Card been inserted? S! Appli becomes unavailable after inserting a different USIM Card. Initialize handset and download S! Appli again.	P. 9-8
<i>Insert USIM</i> appears.	USIM Card is not properly inserted or may be damaged.	P. 1-21

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
<i>Insert microSD</i> or <i>No microSD</i> appears.	Memory card is not properly inserted or may be damaged.	P. 12-13
<i>Replace with A New One</i> or <i>check the Disk</i> appears.	Perform a scan disk on memory card.	P. 12-20
<i>Function Cannot Operate Any More</i> appears.	End one of the currently active functions to continue operation.	-
<i>Other function active Cannot start</i> appears.	These messages appear when you try to use an unavailable function when another function is active.	-
<i>Other function active Cannot operate</i> appears.		
<i>Memory shortage</i> appears.	This message appears when operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory. Reboot handset.	-
<i>Connection failed</i> appears.	Network connection is interrupted due to weak signal.	-
	The page you are trying to access is very busy. Try again after a while.	-



Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
(microSD card indicator marked with ?) appears.	The indicator appears when a defective memory card is inserted.	P. 12-20
Osaifu-Keitai® cannot be used.	Was handset left uncharged for a long period after the battery ran out?	P. 1-30
	Has IC Card Lock or Call Remote Lock been set?	P. 11-3
Handset changes to 3G network even though indicates strong WLAN signal.	Are you subscribed to the Keitai Wi-Fi service? Connection with Keitai Wi-Fi is unavailable if you are unsubscribed.	-
	Are you connected to a valid access point? Perform Prioritized AP Search again.	P. 13-14
	Are access point settings correct? Check Profile Setting and Connection Status .	P. 13-14, P. 13-15
Cannot use WLAN with the created profile.	Is WLAN activated?	P. 13-11
	Is the profile saved to Priority Settings ?	P. 13-14
	Are access point settings correct? Check Profile Setting and Connection Status .	P. 13-14, P. 13-15
	Are you using an access point with a security indicator ? Enter the security key with Set Security Method .	P. 14-30

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot connect to BB mobilepoint.	Did you change any items other than the ID and password for the BBモバイルポイント profile? Connection may become unavailable if profile settings are changed. Perform Reset Profile and configure the settings again.	P. 13-14
Cannot connect with Keitai Wi-Fi service.	Did you perform Initialize ? Perform Retrieve NW Info .	P. 1-26, P. 14-31
Web page for Yahoo! Keitai (PC Site Browser) does not open even though indicates strong WLAN signal.	Did you move to a different shop or other location while using a public WLAN service? If you are going to use the same public WLAN service provided at a different location, you may be unable to reconnect for a certain period of time. Wait for a while then connect again.	-
Re-entry of ID and password is requested while using a public WLAN service with Direct Access .	Was there no key operation for a certain period of time while using PC Site Browser? Re-enter the ID and password or perform Prioritized AP Search again.	P. 13-14, P. 14-31
The WLAN out of range indicator appears.	Are you using a Bluetooth® device? Stop the Bluetooth® device.	P. 13-8



Text Entry Key Assignments

In 5-touch Mode

Key	Kanji/hiragana Entry Mode	Katakana Entry Mode	Alphanumeric Entry Mode	Number Entry Mode
1	あいうえおあいうえお	アイウエオアイウエオ 1	. / @ - : ~ ¹ _ 1	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ 2	abcABC 2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ 3	defDEF 3	3
4	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ 4	ghiGHI 4	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ 5	jklJKL 5	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ 6	mnoMNO 6	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ 7	pqrPQRS 7	7
8	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ 8	tuvTUV 8	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ 9	wxyzWXYZ 9	9
0	わをんーわ	ワヲンーワ ² 0	0	0 + ³
*	。 。 4 5 6	。 。 4 5 6	4 5	*
#	、 。 ? ! ・ (space) ⁷	、 。 ? ! ・ (space) ⁸	、 . ? ! ' - & () ¥ (space)	#

- 1 Appears as “~” during double-byte entry.
- 2 The lower case of “ワ” can be entered in double-byte mode.
- 3 Press and hold in Phone Number Entry window to enter “+.”
- 4 Can be toggled between upper case and lower case.
- 5 to insert line feed “↓.”
- 6 Before confirming characters, press to display “_” and press again in this state to enter “” “ ” or “.”
- 7 Cannot be entered when entering readings in Own Dictionary.
- 8 Only space can be entered when entering readings in USIM Phone Book.



Text Entry Key Assignments

In 2-touch Mode

In Double-byte Mode

Key	Press Next										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	
Press First	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
		あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
							f	g	h	i	j
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
							k	l	m	n	o
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
				っ			p	q	r	s	t
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
							u	v	w	x	y
6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	—	/	
						z					
7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&			¹	
8	や	(ゆ)	よ	*	#			²	
	や		ゆ		よ						
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5	
0	わ	を	ん	³	³	6	7	8	9	0	
	わ		、	。							

In Single-byte Mode

Key	Press Next										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	
Press First	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
		ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
							f	g	h	i	j
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
							k	l	m	n	o
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
				ッ			p	q	r	s	t
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
							u	v	w	x	y
6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/	
						z					
7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	\	&			¹	
8	ヤ	(ユ)	ヨ	*	#			²	
	ヤ		ユ		ヨ						
9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5	
	@	/	-	_	:	.ne.jp	.co.jp	ac.jp	@softbank.ne.jp		
0	ワ	ヲ	ン	、	。	6	7	8	9	0	
	-	.		.	.	www	.com	.html	http://	https://	

- When using double-byte mode to enter reading in USIM Phone Book, double-byte katakana are entered instead of hiragana.
 - Press after entering a character to switch upper and lower case.
- Can be entered when entering pictographs is possible, such as in Text Memo and Common Phrases.
 - Press to toggle between upper-case and lower-case modes.
 - After characters that cannot have “ ” or “ , ” a separate “ ” or “ ” is entered. Before confirming characters, press to display “_” and press again in this state to enter “ ” or “ , ”.
- : A space is entered for these key combinations.



Text Entry Key Assignments

In T9 Input Mode

Key	Kanji/hiragana Entry Mode	Katakana Entry Mode	Alphanumeric Entry Mode
[1]	Rowあ, 1	Rowア, 1	. / @ ? ! () , - _ : ' ~ ⁵ & ¥ 1 Single-byte space
[2]	Rowか, 2	Rowカ, 2	abcABC2
[3]	Rowさ, 3	Rowサ, 3	defDEF3
[4]	Rowた, 4	Rowタ, 4	ghiGHI4
[5]	Rowな, 5	Rowナ, 5	jkIJKL5
[6]	Rowは, 6	Rowハ, 6	mnoMNO6
[7]	Rowま, 7	Rowマ, 7	pqrPQRS7
[8]	Rowや, 8	Rowヤ, 8	tuvTUV8
[9]	Rowら, 9	Rowラ, 9	wxyzWXYZ9
[0]	わをん わー, 0	ワヨン ワ ⁴ ー, 0	0
[*]	1 2	1 2	2 6
[#]	3	3	

- For key assignments in number entry mode, see the table in "In 5-touch Mode."
 - Numbers do not appear when entering reading in USIM Phone Book or Own Dictionary.
 - Press [#] to toggle the case as follows: Caps-lock cancel mode → Shift mode → Caps Lock mode
 - Caps Lock mode: All characters are entered in upper case.
Shift mode: The first characters of words are capitalized and the rest of characters are entered in lower case.
Caps-lock cancel mode: All characters are entered in lower case.
 - Once characters entered in Shift mode have been determined, the mode is switched to Caps-lock cancel mode.
- 1 When editing a reading, pressing [*] adds/cancels " " or " " ."
 - 2 [*] to insert line feed " ↓ ."
 - 3 " , " " , " " ? , " " ! , " " . " and "(space)" appear right after a reading or character is determined.
 - 4 The lower case of "ワ" can only be entered in double-byte mode.
 - 5 "ー" is entered in double-byte mode.
 - 6 Pressing before confirming characters enters a space before confirming.



Kuten Code List

1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes																																						
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6		7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9																										
448	厄	役	約	藥	訊	躍	靖	蜻	數	476										517										558	協	恆	恍	恃	恣	恤	恹	恹	恹	517	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	558	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹										
449	矢	鐘								477										518										559	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	518	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	559	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹										
449	偷	諭	愈	癩	油	優	勇	友	幽	478										519										560	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	519	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	560	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹										
450	愈	輸	有	唯	油	優	勇	友	幽	479										520										561	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	520	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	561	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹										
451	憂	輸	有	唯	油	優	勇	友	幽	480										521										562	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	521	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	嗶	562	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹	恹										
452	悠	祐								481										522										563	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	482										523										564	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
452	余	揚	養							483										524										565	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	484										525										566	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
453	與	搖	羊	慈						485										526										567	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	486										527										568	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
454	與	搖	羊	慈						487										528										569	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	488										529										570	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
455	與	搖	羊	慈						489										530										571	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	490										531										572	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
456	與	搖	羊	慈						491										532										573	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	492										533										574	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
456	與	搖	羊	慈						493										534										575	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	494										535										576	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
458	履	李	梨	理	瑞	陸	律	立	利	495										536										577	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	496										537										578	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
459	律	律	律	律	律	律	律	律	律	497										538										579	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	498										539										580	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
461	律	律	律	律	律	律	律	律	律	499										540										581	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	462										541										582	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
463	律	律	律	律	律	律	律	律	律	500										542										583	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	464										543										584	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
464	律	律	律	律	律	律	律	律	律	501										544										585	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	465										545										586	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
466	瑞	聖	滌	累	累	累	累	累	累	502										546										587	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	467										547										588	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
467	聖	滌	累	累	累	累	累	累	累	503										548										589	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	468										549										590	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
468	聖	滌	累	累	累	累	累	累	累	504										550										591	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	469										551										592	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
469	聖	滌	累	累	累	累	累	累	累	505										552										593	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	470										553										594	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
470	聖	滌	累	累	累	累	累	累	累	506										554										595	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	471										555										596	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
471	露	勞	妻	呂	魯	魯	魯	魯	魯	507										556										597	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	472										557										598	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
472	露	勞	妻	呂	魯	魯	魯	魯	魯	508										558										599	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	473										559										600	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
473	露	勞	妻	呂	魯	魯	魯	魯	魯	509										560										601	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	474										561										602	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
474	露	勞	妻	呂	魯	魯	魯	魯	魯	510										562										603	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	475										563										604	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆
475	露	勞	妻	呂	魯	魯	魯	魯	魯	511										564										605	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆	恆																														



Weather Indicators

Normally Displayed	
	Clear (Day)
	Clear (Night)
	Cloudy
	Rain
	Snow
	Thunder and Lighting
	0% Chance of Rain
	10% Chance of Rain
	20% Chance of Rain
	30% Chance of Rain
	40% Chance of Rain
	50% Chance of Rain
	60% Chance of Rain
	70% Chance of Rain
	80% Chance of Rain
	90% Chance of Rain
	100% Chance of Rain
	Later
	Partial

Pollen Level	
	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extremely High

Sakura Blossoms	
	Budding
	Near Full Bloom
	Peak Bloom
	Past Peak

Autumn Foliage	
	No Color
	Moderate Color
	Peak Color
	Past Peak

UV Level	
	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Very High

Typhoon	
	Forming
	Approaching
	Emergency Status

Disaster	
	Heavy Rain
	Strong Winds

Topic	
	Notification



Communication Style

- Enter menu item numbers for direct menu access. Note that Main Menu theme must be set to **Basic**.
- See “Check Default Style Mode Settings” (P. 14-3) for menu items whose default settings differ according to the model color.

Mail

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Inbox	—	—	—	P. 5-6
Outbox	—	—	—	P. 5-9
Draft	—	—	—	P. 5-21
Tomomato-Mail BOX	—	—	—	P. 5-11
Compose Message	—	—	—	P. 5-3
Compose SMS	—	—	—	P. 5-5
Server Mail	Mail List	—	—	P. 5-7, P. 5-18
	Server Mail Memory	—	—	P. 5-19
Retrieve New	—	—	—	P. 5-18
Templates	—	—	—	P. 5-17
Mail Setting	Custom Mail Address	—	—	P. 14-15
	Scroll	—	1 Line	P. 14-16
	Font Size	—	Standard	
	Mail List Disp.	—	1 Line+Body	
	Start Attachment (auto)	—	OFF	
	Header/Signature	—	Edit Header, Edit Signature: Not Stored, Edit Quotation Marks:-----, Insert Setting: Selected	P. 14-15, P. 14-16
	Mail Box Lock	—	Inbox, Outbox, Draft, Server Mail: Unlocked	P. 5-12



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Mail Setting	Receiving Setting	—	Operation Preferred	P. 14-16
	Read Out Setting	—	Select Voice: Female 1, Read Out Received Mail: ON	
	Emotion/Keyword	—	Disp. Emotion: ON, Disp. Keyword: OFF	P. 14-15
	S! Mail Settings	—	Message Download: Auto(All), Delivery Report: OFF	
	SMS Settings	—	SMS Report Request: OFF, SMS Validity Period: 3 Days, SMS Input Character: Japanese(70char.)	
	Check Settings	—	—	P. 14-16
	Reset	—	—	

Yahoo!

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Yahoo! Keitai	—	—	—	P. 6-3
Bookmark	—	—	—	P. 6-13
Saved Pages	—	—	—	P. 6-14
History	—	—	—	P. 6-3
Enter URL	—	—	—	
PC Site Browser	—	—	See "PC Site Browser under Yahoo!" (P. 15-32).	—
Browser Settings	Font Size	—	Standard	P. 14-18
	Scroll	—	Single Line	
	Downloads	—	Display Images: ON, Play Sounds: ON	
	Flash Sound Effect	—	ON	
	Memory Manager	—	—	
	Security	—	Manufacture Number: ON, Send Referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: Ask NW Access	
	Check Settings	—	—	



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Browser Settings	Initialized Browser	—	—	P. 14-18
	Reset	—	—	

S! Appli

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
S! Appli List	—	—	—	P. 9-9
Settings	Sound/Vib Settings	—	Volume: Level 4, Vibration: ON	P. 14-23
	Backlight Settings	—	Switch ON/OFF: Link To Phone Set., Blink: ON	
	Reset	—	—	
Information	—	—	—	P. 9-8

TV

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Watch TV	—	—	—	P. 8-6
Program Guide	—	—	—	P. 8-9
Booking Program List	—	—	—	P. 8-14
Timer Recording List	—	—	—	
Result Timer Rec	—	—	—	P. 8-19
TV Link	—	—	—	P. 8-17
Channel List	—	—	—	P. 8-16
Channel Settings	—	—	—	P. 8-3
User Settings	Subtitles	—	ON (Wide:Bottom)	P. 14-20
	Rec. While Low Battery	—	ON	P. 14-21
	TV Effect	—	Sound Effect: Auto, Visual Image Effect: Dynamic	P. 14-20



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
User Settings	TV Power Saving	—	OFF (not set)	P. 14-20
	Display Light	—	Constant Light	
	Data BC Settings	—	Set Image Disp.: ON, Sound Effect: ON	P. 14-21
	Icon Always Show	—	ON	P. 14-20
	Time Shift Setup	—	Auto ON	P. 14-21
	Check TV Settings	—	—	
	Reset Channel Setting	—	—	
	Reset Storage Area	—	—	
Reset TV Settings	—	—	—	

Camera

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Photo Mode	—	—	—	P. 7-6
Movie Mode	—	—	—	P. 7-9
Voice Mode	—	—	—	P. 7-15
Quick Album	—	—	—	P. 12-6
Videos	—	—	—	P. 7-9

Entertainment

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Wi-Fi Contents	—	—	—	P. 13-15
Mobile Widget	Widget Contents	—	—	P. 10-3
	Settings	—	See "Settings for Mobile Widget under Entertainment" (P. 15-33)	—
S! Quick News	S! Quick News List	—	—	P. 10-5



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
S! Quick News	Settings	—	See “Settings for S! Quick News under Entertainment” (P. 15-33)	—
S! Info Ch./Weather	What’s New	—	—	P. 10-6
	History	—	—	
	Register/Cancel	—	—	
	Get Latest Contents	—	—	P. 10-9
	Settings	—	S! Information Notif.: ON, Font Size: Standard	P. 14-25
	Weather Indicator	—	See “Weather Indicator for S! Info Ch./Weather under Entertainment” (P. 15-34)	—
BookSurfing	—	—	—	P. 10-8

Tools

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Alarm	—	44	—	P. 11-17
Schedule	—	45	—	P. 11-9
Calculator	—	85	—	P. 11-16
Dictionary	Enter Word	—	—	P. 2-30
	Text Reader	—	—	—
	Reference History	—	—	P. 2-30
Text Memo	—	42	—	P. 11-14
To Do List	—	95	—	P. 11-12
Life History Viewer	—	—	—	P. 11-7
S! GPS Navi	Navi Appli	—	—	P. 11-5
	Current Location	—	—	
	Position Location	—	—	
	Location Logs	—	—	P. 11-24



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
S! GPS Navi	NAVI Settings	—	See "NAVI Settings for S! GPS Navi under Tools" (P. 15-34)	—
Osaifu-Keitai	Lifestyle-Appli	—	—	P. 11-2
	IC Card Lock Set.	—	IC Card Lock: OFF, IC Lock(Power-off): Maintain	P. 11-3
	Call Remote Lock	—	OFF	P. 11-4
	IC Card Illumination	—	ON	P. 14-28
	Interface Settings	—	Browser: ON	
S! Addressbook Back-up	Start Sync	—	—	P. 2-27
	Auto Sync Settings	—	ON/OFF: OFF	P. 14-11
	Sync Log	—	—	P. 2-28
Account Details	—	0	—	P. 1-30
Bar Code Reader	—	—	—	P. 11-19
Text Reader	—	—	—	P. 11-21
Receive Ir Data	—	79	—	P. 13-3
Bluetooth	Device List	—	—	P. 13-6
	Register New Devices	—	—	
	Bluetooth ON/Bluetooth OFF	—	Bluetooth OFF	P. 13-8
	Accept Registered	—	—	P. 14-29
	Bluetooth Settings	—	Time-out to Search: 05 Seconds, Forward Ring Tone: ON, Dial From Other Device: Valid	
Play/Erase Msg.	—	—	—	P. 3-6, P. 3-20
Play/Erase VC Msg.	—	—	—	P. 3-6
Voice Memo	—	43	—	P. 11-15
Voice Announce	—	91	—	P. 14-10
Forwarding Image	—	—	ON	P. 14-11



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
microSD Manager	—	—	—	P. 12-14
USIM Operation	—	—	—	P. 2-25, P. 5-20

Data Folder

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
My Picture	—	46	—	P. 12-2
Melody	—	16	—	
S! Appli	—	—	—	
Widget	—	—	—	
Ring Songs-Music	—	—	—	
Videos	—	—	—	
Books	—	—	—	
TV	—	—	—	
PDF	—	—	—	
Other Documents	—	—	—	

Music

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
—	—	—	—	P. 9-5

Own Data

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Received Calls	—	24	—	P. 3-12



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Dialed Calls	—	—	—	P. 3-11
Blog/Mail Member	—	97	—	P. 5-4
Tomo-Den	—	—	—	P. 3-13
Common Phrases	—	38	—	P. 2-16
Own Dictionary	—	82	—	
DL Dictionary	—	—	—	P. 2-17

Phone Book

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
—	—	—	—	P. 2-20

Settings

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Style Mode Setting	—	—	—	P. 14-3
Incoming Call	Ring Volume	50	Phone, Video Call, Mail: Level 4	P. 14-7
	Select Ring Tone	13	Phone (Select Ring Tone: Pattern 1, Select Calling Disp.: Flying Type), Video Call (Select Ring Tone: Pattern 3, Select Calling Disp.: Flying Type), Mail (Select Ring Tone: You've got mail 1, Select Receiving Disp.: Flying Type)	P. 14-8
	Vibrator	54	Phone, Video Call, Mail: OFF	
	Illumination	89	Set Color: Varies by model color., Set Pattern: Standard, Edit Color Name under Adjust Color: Color1 to 12, Adjust Color Tone under Adjust Color: Color 1 to 12, Missed Info: ON	
	Manner Mode Setting	20	Manner Mode Set: Manner Mode, Manner Start Time, Manner Release Time: OFF	P. 14-9



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Incoming Call	Disp. Phone Book Image	—	ON	P. 14-8
	Answer Setting	58	Any Key Answer	P. 14-9
	Mail Ring Time	68	Mail: ON (Ring Time: 05 Seconds)	P. 14-8
	Ring Time(sec.)	90	Set Mute Seconds: OFF, Missed Calls Display: Display	P. 4-6
	Info Notice Setting	65	ON	P. 14-9
	Answering Machine	55	OFF	P. 3-5
	Disp. Call/Receive No.	—	Varies by model color.	P. 14-10
Talk	Hyper Clear Voice	—	Low	P. 14-12
	Auto Voice Memo	—	OFF	
	Noise Reduction	76	ON	
	Quality Alarm	75	No Tone	
	Reconnect Signal	77	No Tone	
	Illumination in Talk	—	OFF	
	Set Hold Tone	—	On Hold Tone: Tone 1	
	Setting When Folded	18	End the Call	
Dialing	Pause Dial	84	—	P. 14-11
	Sub-address Setting	—	OFF	
	Prefix Setting	—	国際発信 (Prefix: 0046010), 184 (Prefix: 184), 186 (Prefix: 186)	
	Headset SW to Dial	—	OFF	P. 14-10
	Int'l Dial Assistance	—	Auto Int'l Call Set.: ON, Country Code Setting: 日本 (Country Code: 81), IDD Prefix Setting: 国際発信 (IDD Prefix Code: 0046010)	P. 14-12
Video Call	Visual Preference	—	Normal	P. 3-19
	Select Image	—	On Hold, Holding, Substitute Image, Answering Machine, Preparing, Voice Memo: Pre-installed	P. 14-13
	Auto Redial as Voice	—	OFF	



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Video Call	Display Setting	—	Main Display: Other Side, Front Camera Reverse: ON	P. 14-13
	Hands-free Switch	—	ON	
Display	Display Setting	56	Varies by model color.	P. 14-3
	Backlight	70	Lighting: 15Sec.+Saver (Light Time: 01 Minutes), Charging: Standard, Area: LCD+Keys, Brightness: ON+Level 4	P. 14-5
	Display Design	86	Varies by model color.	P. 14-4
	Font	66	Font Type: Gothic, Thickness: Bold, Character Size: Standard	
	Desktop Icon	63	Theme1 (Wi-Fi コンテンツを探す, メニューリスト, S1 Quick News List, 各種手続・料金, 待ちうた, TV, Photo Mode, Quick Search)	P. 14-6
	3D Display Setting	—	ON	
	言語選択 (Language)	15	日本語	P. 14-5
	Original Menu	52	Account Details, Receive Ir Data, Bluetooth, Calculator, Alarm, Bar Code Reader, Dictionary, My Picture, Books	P. 14-7
	Menu Display Set	57	Menu Display: List, Theme: Varies by model color., Memory Focus: OFF	P. 14-6
	Viewer Settings	—	Picture	P. 14-5
	Icons	36	—	P. 1-17
	Icons Setting	—	ON	P. 14-7
	Privacy Angle	—	OFF	P. 14-5
	Image Display Mode	—	Vivid	
	Quick Info Setting	—	Display Sender	
	Share Style Settings	—	W-stand-by Display: Varies by model color., Clock Size: Big	
Call Time/Charge	Screen Effect	—	OFF	P. 14-5
	Call Data	61	—	P. 3-12
	Set Max Cost Limit	—	Notify Setting: OFF	P. 14-13
	Reset Total	60	—	P. 3-20
	Auto Reset Total Cost	—	OFF	P. 14-13



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Clock	Set Main Time	31	Auto Time Adjust: Auto, Summer Time: OFF	P. 14-2
	Set Sub Clock	–	Display Method: OFF, Summer Time: OFF, Area Name: Display	
	Clock Display	39	Display: ON, Size: Small, Color: Varies by model color.	
	Alarm Setting	–	Alarm Preferred	
	Reading Out in Alarm	–	This Function cannot operate in English-Mode.	–
	Clock Alarm Tone Set	–	Alarm Tone	P. 14-2
	Auto Power ON	–	OFF	P. 14-3
	Auto Power OFF	–	OFF	
Security	Lock	–	OFF	P. 4-3
	IC Card Lock Set.	–	IC Card Lock: OFF, IC Lock (Power-off): Maintain	P. 11-3
	Call Remote Lock	–	OFF	P. 11-4
	Keypad Lock	–	After Closed: OFF, Timer: OFF, Lock Key: ON, Security Code: NO	P. 4-4
	Emission OFF Mode	–	NO (not set)	P. 4-6
	Secret Mode	40	OFF (not set)	P. 4-7
	Secret Data Only Mode	41	OFF (not set)	
	Reject Unknown	–	Accept	P. 4-6
	Call Setting W/O ID	10	Unknown, Payphone, User Unset: Accept (Select Ring Tone: Same as Ring Tone, Select Calling Disp.: Same as Display)	
	Change Security Code	29	9999	P. 1-29
	IC Card Authentic.	–	OFF	P. 4-5
PIN Setting	–	PIN1 Code Entry Set: OFF	P. 4-2	
Style Change Setting	Auto-ans at Style-chg	–	OFF	P. 14-28
	Style-chg Sound	–	Touch Style, Share Style, Communication Style: OFF	
	Style-chg Illumination	–	ON (Set Color: Varies by model color., Set Pattern: Pattern 2)	
External Connection	USB Mode Setting	–	Communication Mode	P. 13-9



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
External Connection	Headset Usage Setting	51	Headset+speaker	P. 14-10
	Headset Mic. Setting	—	Headset Microphone	
	Auto Answer Setting	94	Phone, Video Call: OFF	
Connection Settings	SMS Center Selection	—	819066519300	P. 14-17
	Certificate	—	All Certificates: Valid	P. 6-17
	Retrieve NW Info	—	—	P. 1-26
Int'l Roaming Set	NW Search Mode	—	Auto	P. 14-14
	PLMN Setting	—	—	
	Select Network	—	AUTO	
	Display Operator Name	—	Display OFF	
Optional Services	Caller ID Notification	17	Activate/Deactivate: ON	P. 3-22
	Voice Mail/Divert	—	—	P. 3-16, P. 3-21
	Call Waiting	—	—	P. 3-21
	Call Barring	—	—	P. 3-22
WLAN Setting	ON/OFF	—	ON	P. 13-11
	Prioritized AP Search	—	—	P. 13-14
	Access Point Settings	—	Priority Settings: Unset	
	Manual Setup	—	See "Manual Setup for WLAN Setting under Settings" (P. 15-34)	—
	Easy Connecting(AOSS)	—	—	P. 13-12
	Easy Connecting(WPS)	—	—	
	WLAN/3G Change Setting	—	Auto Mode	P. 14-30
Reset WLAN Setting	—	—		
Other Settings	Keypad Sound	30	OFF	P. 14-10
	Charge Sound	—	ON	P. 14-10



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Other Settings	Battery Level	71	—	P. 1-30
	Network Status	—	—	
	Character Input Set	35	Input Mode: 5-touch, Prediction: ON, T9 Change Mode: T9 Kanji Change Mode, CHG Input Size: Standard, Auto Cursor: Normal	P. 14-26
	Neuropointer	—	Pointer: ON, Speed: Normal under Simple, Pointer Icon Setting: Varies by model color.	
	Touch Panel Setting	—	Touch Style, Share Style, Communication Style: ON, Vibrator: OFF	P. 14-27
	Shortcut-key Setting	—	Camera	P. 14-26
	Reset Settings	23	—	P. 14-31
	Initialize	—	—	
Software Update	—	—	P. 15-4	

PC Site Browser under Yahoo!

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Home	—	—	—	P. 6-6
Bookmark	—	—	—	P. 6-13
History	—	—	—	P. 6-7
Enter URL	—	—	—	
Yahoo! Keitai	—	—	—	P. 6-3
PC Site Brw. Settings	Warning Messages	—	ON	P. 14-19
	Scroll	—	Single Line	P. 14-18
	Display Mode Settings	—	PC Screen: 100%, Small Screen: Standard	P. 14-19
	Downloads	—	Display Images: ON, Play Sounds: ON	P. 14-18
	Memory Manager	—	—	



Menu List

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
PC Site Brw. Settings	Security	—	Manufacture Number: ON, Send Referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: ON	P. 14-18
	Check PC Site Brw. Set	—	—	
	Initialized Browser	—	—	
	Reset PC Site Brw. Set	—	—	

Settings for Mobile Widget under Entertainment

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Auto Refresh	—	—	ON	P. 14-24
Auto Roaming	—	—	OFF	
Delete Content	—	—	—	
Cookies	—	—	ON	
Delete Cookies	—	—	—	
Standby Disp. Set.	—	—	ON	

Settings for S! Quick News under Entertainment

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Auto Refresh	S! Quick News	—	OFF	P. 14-24
	General	—	OFF	
	Special	—	OFF	
Standby Settings	Standby Disp. Set.	—	ON	
	Speed Settings	—	Normal	
	Unread & Read Set.	—	Unread & Read	
Set Image Disp.	—	—	ON	



Menu List

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Del. Quick News	—	—	—	P. 14-24

Weather Indicator for S! Info Ch./Weather under Entertainment

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Weather	—	—	—	P. 10-6
Manual Update	—	—	—	P. 10-10
Settings	Weather Update	—	ON	P. 14-25
	Standby Setting	—	ON	
	Weather Notif.	—	ON	

NAVI Settings for S! GPS Navi under Tools

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Map Setting	Select Navi Appli	—	NAVITIME	P. 14-28
	Map Activate Setting	—	After positioning	
Location Navi	Service Settings	—	—	P. 11-6
Map URL Settings	—	—	1: http://map.navitime.jp , 2, 3, 4, 5: Not Recorded	P. 14-29
Send Location Info	—	—	Confirm	P. 14-29

Manual Setup for WLAN Setting under Settings

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Profile Setting (Select profile)	Set Profile Name	—	—	P. 14-30



Menu List

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Profile Setting (Select profile)	WLAN Detail Setting	—	BBモバイルポイント (ESSID Setting: mobilepoint, Radio Mode Setting: AUTO(802.11b/g), プロファイル02 to 20 (ESSID Setting: ESSID02 to ESSID20, Radio Mode Setting: AUTO(802.11b/g))	P. 14-30
	IP Setting	—	IP Address Setting, DNS Setting: Automatic Setup	
	HTTP Proxy Setting	—	None	
	Set Security Method	—	BBモバイルポイント: WEP, プロファイル02 to 20: None	
	Public WLAN Setting	—	OFF	
	WLAN Access Mode	—	Keitai Wi-Fi	
Display Information	Connection Status	—	—	P. 13-15
	MAC Address	—	—	



Share Style

1st-level Menu	2nd-level Menu	Default Setting	Refer to
Mail	Inbox	—	P. 5-6
	Outbox	—	P. 5-9
	Draft	—	P. 5-21
	Tomomato-Mail BOX	—	P. 5-11
	Compose Message	—	P. 5-3
	Compose SMS	—	P. 5-5
Yahoo!	Yahoo! Keitai	—	P. 6-4
	Bookmark	—	P. 6-13
	Saved Pages	—	P. 6-14
	History	—	P. 6-3
	Enter URL	—	
	PC Site Browser	—	P. 6-8
TV	Watch TV	—	P. 8-7
	Video	—	P. 8-13
Camera	—	—	P. 7-3
My Picture	—	—	P. 12-2
Videos	—	—	



Touch Style

1st-level Menu	2nd-level Menu	Default Setting	Refer to
Mail	Inbox	—	P. 5-7
	Retrieve New	—	P. 5-18
Yahoo!	Yahoo! Keitai	—	P. 6-3
	Bookmark	—	P. 6-13
	Saved Pages	—	P. 6-14
	History	—	P. 6-4
	PC Site Browser	—	P. 6-7
TV	Watch TV	—	P. 8-6
	Video	—	P. 8-12
Camera	—	—	P. 7-3
Data Folder	My Picture	—	P. 12-4
	Videos	—	P. 9-5
	Quick Album	—	P. 12-7
Music	—	—	P. 9-5
Phone	Phone Book	—	P. 2-23
	Tomo-Den	—	P. 3-13
	Redial	—	P. 3-11
	Received Calls	—	P. 3-4
	Direct Input	—	



Main Specifications

Model		931N
Dimensions (H×W×D) (In Touch Style)		Approx. 113 × 50 × 18.6 mm (thickest Part: Approx. 23.4 mm)
Weight		Approx. 139 g
Continuous Standby Time		[3G] Approx. 560 hrs [GSM] Approx. 280 hrs
Continuous Talk Time		[3G] Voice Call: Approx. 200 min. Video Call: Approx. 90 min. [GSM] Voice Call: Approx. 190 min.
Charging Time		Up to approx. 130 min.
Display	Type	LTPS TFT 262,144 colors
	Size	Approx. 3.2 inches
	Pixels	409,920 pixels (480 x 854 dots)
Camera	Imaging device	Front Camera: CMOS Rear Camera: CMOS
	Lens size	Front Camera: 1/10.0 inch Rear Camera: 1/3.2 inch

Camera	Effective pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.33 million pixels Rear Camera: Approx. 8.1 million pixels
	Recording pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.31 million pixels Rear Camera: Approx. 8.0 million pixels
	Zoom (digital)	Front Camera: Up to approx. 1.9 x Rear Camera: Up to approx. 9.0 x
	Still images	Up to approx. 1,000 files ¹
	Still images for continuous shooting	5 to 20 files ²
	Still image file format	JPEG
	Video recording time	Handset: Up to approx. 218 sec. ³ Memory card: Up to approx. 120 min. ³
	Video file format	MP4
	TV	Continuous watching time
Maximum recording time		Approx. 540 min. ⁴
Chaku-Uta® and Chaku-Uta Full®	Storage Capacity	Approx. 195 MB ⁵

¹ In case the image size is QCIF (176 x 144) and the image quality is set to **Normal** (the file size is 10 KB).



Specifications

- Varies depending on the image size.
- Time for recording when recorded in the following conditions:

	Handset	Memory card
Image size	QCIF (176 x 144)	
Image quality	Normal	
File size	2MB	Long Time
Recording type	Normal	

- Approximate time when recorded on a 2 GB memory card.
- Shared with images, videos, saved pages, books, images (captured with TV), PDF files and graphic mail templates.

Handset Materials

Where Used		Material/Finish
Multi Selector key		Aluminum alloy, alumite
Neuropointer key		Aluminum alloy, alumite
Rear Camera		ABS resin, tin vapor deposition + UV coating
Strap support		Aluminum, alumite
Battery compartment	Screws	Iron, nickel plating
	Terminals	Copper alloy, gold plating
Charging terminal (Connector for desktop holder)		Phosphor bronze (for spring), gold plating
Metal parts of TV Antenna		SUS
Swing plate (metallic plate between Display and the main unit)		SUS, nitriding/nickel plating



Maximum Number of Storable Items

Item		Maximum Number	Maximum That Can be Protected
Phone Book entries		1,000 ¹	—
Schedule	Events	2,500	—
	Holidays	100	—
To Do List	Tasks	100	—
Mail	Received messages	1,000 ^{2 3 4 5}	1,000 ²
	Sent messages	400 ^{2 3 4}	200 ²
	Draft messages	20 ²	—
Bookmarks	Yahoo! Keitai	100 ^{5 6}	—
	PC Site Browser	100 ⁶	—
Saved Pages		100 ²	50 ²
S! Appli		99 ^{2 5}	—
Still images		1,000 ^{2 4}	—
Videos		100 ^{2 6}	—
Captured screenshots (TV)		100 ²	—
Widgets		100 ^{2 5}	—
Melody files		400 ²	—
Songs		100 ²	—
books		400 ²	—
PDF files		400 ²	—

Item		Maximum Number	Maximum That Can be Protected
Template (Graphic Mail)		1,000 ⁵	—
Answering Machine	Voice calls	5 (20 sec. each)	—
	Video calls	2 (20 sec. each)	—
Voice Memo		1 (20 sec.)	—
Dialed Calls		30	—
Received Calls		30	—
Speed Dial		10 (Entry Number 000-009)	—

- 1 Up to 50 entries can be saved on USIM Card.
- 2 The actual number that can be saved or protected may be less depending on the data size.
- 3 An additional 10 received and sent SMS messages can be saved on USIM Card.
- 4 Up to 100 additional messages/files can be saved in Secret Folders.
- 5 Includes data stored by default.
- 6 Up to 10 additional files can be saved in Secret Folder.



Memory Card Folders & Files

Folder			File	
DCIM	XXXNECDT ¹		Still images captured with Camera and JPEG images copied or moved from handset	
MISC			Settings file for DPOF printing	
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	Mail	Inbox	Backup data of Inbox
			Sent Messages	Backup data of Outbox
			Drafts	Backup data of Draft
		Utility	Calendar	Backup data of Schedule
			Contacts	Backup data of Phone Book
			Memo	Backup data of Text Memo
			Rights	Backup file of content keys
			Tasks	Backup file of To Do List
		My Items	Book	Book files
			Widget	Widget files
			Bookmarks	Backup file of Bookmarks
			Flash(R)	Flash [®] files
			Games and More	S! Appli files
			Music	Songs
			Other Documents	PDF files or Other document files
Pictograms	My Pictograms			
Pictures	Still images			



Specifications

Folder			File	
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	My Items	Sounds & Ringtones	Melodies
			Videos	Videos
		NE_Folder		Other files
SD_VIDEO	MGR_INFO			TV Program recording management file
	PRGXXX ²			TV Program recording files

- 1 XXX: Three single-byte numbers from 100 to 999
- 2 XXX: Three single-byte alphanumeric characters (hexadecimal) from 001 to FFF



Number

2-touch Mode	2-17
3D Display Setting	14-6
5-touch Mode	2-13

A

Access Files	12-3
Composite Image	12-17
List Setting	12-18
Set Image Disp.	12-17
Access Handset Functions	2-2
Access History	6-3, 6-7
Delete	6-16
Access Points	13-13
Access the Internet	
From Bookmarks	6-13
From Data Broadcasts	8-8
From Entered URL Record	6-16
From Scanned Data	11-27
From TV Links	8-17
From URL in Text	5-22
From Web Page	6-17
Open New Tab	6-10
PC Site Browser	6-6
Use Access History	6-3, 6-7
Yahoo! Keitai	6-3
Account Details	1-30
Add Folder	
Bookmark	6-19

Data Folder	12-12
Messages	5-20
Adjust Earpiece Volume	3-3, 3-9
After Sales Service	15-56
Alarm	11-17
Cancel	11-18
Edit	11-26
Release All	11-26
Set	11-17
Alarm Activation Operations	11-17
Alarm Notification Operations	
Schedule	11-10
To Do List	11-12
Alarm Setting	14-2
Answer Calls	
Bluetooth®	13-7
Video Calls	3-9
Voice Calls	3-4
Answer Setting	14-9
Answering Machine	3-5
Activate When a Call Arrives	3-6
Delete Messages	3-20
Play Messages	3-6
Settings	3-5
Any Key Answer	14-9
Attach to Mail	
Bookmark	6-19
Delete Attached Files	5-16
Files	5-3
Shot Still Image/Video	5-16

Authentication Password	13-3
Auto Answer Setting	14-10
Auto Cursor	14-26
Auto Power On/Off	14-3
Auto Redial as Voice	14-13
Auto Refresh (Mobile Widget) ...	14-24
Auto Refresh (S! Quick News) ...	14-24
Auto Reset Total Cost	14-13
Auto Roaming	14-24
Auto Save Set	7-4
Auto Timer	7-13
Auto Voice Memo	14-12
Auto-sort	5-11

B

Backlight	14-5
Backlight Settings (S! Appli)	14-23
Bar Code Reader	11-19
Check Scanned Data	11-19
Delete Scanned Data	11-28
Scan	11-19
Basic Key Operations	1-3
Battery	1-22
Installation	1-22
Blog/Mail Member	5-4
Add Addresses	5-4
Blog Destination	5-4
Delete Addresses	5-16
Edit Address	5-16



Specify Recipients	5-15
Bluetooth®	13-5
Add New Device	13-6
Connecting	13-6
Delete Added Device	13-16
Device List	13-7
Discontinue	13-8
Playing Music	13-7
Search	13-6
Settings	14-29
Talk	13-7
Bluetooth Info	14-29
Bookmarks	6-13
Access Page	6-13
Add Folder	6-19
Delete	6-20
Delete Folder	6-19
Edit URL	6-19
Move	6-19
Number of Bookmarks	6-19
Save	6-13
Save Scanned URL	11-28
Send by Mail	6-19
Sort Folder	6-19
Books	10-8
BookSurfing®	10-8

C

Calculator	11-16
Call Barring	3-22

Call Forward	3-16
Call Rejection	3-18
Call Time/Charge	3-12
Call Waiting	3-21
Call While Abroad	3-15
Caller ID	3-22
Camera	7-2
Auto Save Set	7-4
Blog Upload	7-16
Capture Still Images	7-6
Effect	7-16
Flicker	7-16
Memory Info	7-16
Movie Type Set	7-16
Quality Setting	7-16
Quick Album	12-6
Record Videos	7-9
Settings	14-22
Shake Correction	7-5, 7-16
Switch Cameras	7-5
Viewfinders	7-3
Capture Still Images	7-6
Auto Timer	7-13
Continuous Shooting	7-12
Frame	7-13
Panoramic Shooting	7-13
Smile Mode	7-12
Center Access Code	1-29
Certificate	6-17
Chance Capture	7-14

Change	2-32
Entry Number	2-32
Font Size (Message Text)	5-22
Graphic Mail Effects	5-17
Icon Image	2-29
Network Password	3-22
PIN1/PIN2	4-2
Security Code	1-29
Set To, Cc or Bcc	5-15
Change Skin	14-23
Channel List	14-20
Delete a Channel	14-20
Remote Control Numbers	14-20
Save Stations of a Different Area	8-16
Switch	8-16
Channel Settings	8-3
Automatic	8-16
Character Stamp	12-10
Charge Battery	1-22
AC Charger	1-24
Desktop Holder	1-25
Charge Sound	14-10
Check Battery Level	1-30
Check PC Site Brw. Set	14-18
Check Settings (Mail)	14-16
Check Settings (Yahoo! Keitai) ..	14-18
Check TV Settings	14-21
CHG Input Method	2-13
CHG Input Size	14-26
Clear Learned (Text Entry)	14-26



Clock	14-2
Clock Alarm Tone Set	14-2
Clock Display	14-2
Codes	1-29
Center Access Code	1-29
Network Password	1-29
PIN1/PIN2	1-20
Security Code	1-29
Communication Style	1-6
Compose & Send Messages	
Attach Files	5-3
Compose S! Mail	5-3
Compose SMS	5-5
Delete Receiver	5-15
Edit	5-21
From Phone Book	2-33
From Scanned Data	11-27
From Tomo-Den	3-13
From Web Page	6-17
Graphic Mail	5-4
Insert Header/Signature	5-15
Save	5-16
Specify Blog/Mail Member List	
Recipients	5-15
To, Cc or Bcc	5-15
Compose Messages	5-3, 5-5
Continuous Shooting	7-12
Cookie Settings (Internet)	14-18
Cookie Settings	
(Mobile Widget)	14-24

Copy	
Between Handset & Memory Card	12-15
Event	11-25
Phone Book Entries	2-25, 2-33
SMS Messages	5-20
Text	2-15
Customer Service	15-57
Customize Mail Address	14-15

D

Data BC Settings	14-21
Data Broadcasts	8-8
Data Folder	12-2
Add Folder	12-12
Change Order of Files	12-17
Check File Information	12-17
Delete Files	12-19
Delete Folder	12-19
Edit File Name	12-19
Edit Folder Name	12-18
Edit Still Images	12-10
Edit Videos	12-11
Memory Info	12-19
Move Files	12-12
Open Files	12-3
Original Animation	12-7
Playlist (Melody)	12-8
Playlist (Video)	12-8
Quick Album	12-6
Ringtone	12-17

Secret Folders	4-7
Stand-by Display	12-17
Delete All LifeApp	14-28
Delete All S! App	14-23
Delete Cache	14-18
Delete Content	
(Mobile Widget)	14-24
Delete Cookies	14-18
Delete Quick News	14-24
Delivery Report (S! Mail)	14-15
Desktop Icon Settings	14-6
Desktop Icons	2-4
Add Icons	2-6
CHG Icon Image	2-29
Delete Desktop Icons	2-29
Reset	2-29
Sort	2-29
Desktop Info	2-7
Dial	
Bluetooth®	13-7
From Dialed Calls	3-11
From Phone Book	2-22
From Received Calls	3-11
From Redial	3-11
From Scanned Data	11-27
From Tomo-Den	3-13
From Web Page	6-17
Global Roaming	3-15
International Calls	3-4
Phone Number in Message Text	5-21



- Video Calls 3-8
- Voice Calls 3-3
- Dial From Other Device 14-29
- Dial Lock 4-3
- Dialed Calls 3-11
- Dictionaries 2-16
- Disp. Call/Receive No. 14-10
- Disp. Phone Book Image 14-8
- Display Design 14-4
- Display Indicators 1-16
- Display Light (TV) 14-20
- Display Mode Settings 14-19
- Display Operator Name 14-14
- Display Positions 1-6
- Display Setting 14-3
- Display Setting (Video Call) 14-13
- DL Dictionary 2-17
 - Delete 2-32
- Download
 - Books 10-8
 - Music 9-4
 - S! Appli 9-8
 - Templates (Graphic Mail) 5-17
 - Widgets 10-3
- Downloads 14-18
- DPOF setting 12-16
 - Cancel 12-20

E

- ECO Mode 1-32
- Edit
 - Address (Blog/Mail Member) 5-16
 - Alarm Settings 11-26
 - Blog/Mail Member List Name 5-16
 - Event 11-25
 - File Name (Data Folder) 12-19
 - Folder Name (Bookmark) 6-19
 - Folder Name (Data Folder) 12-18
 - Folder Name (Messages) 5-20
 - Folder Name (Templates) 2-31
 - Own Dictionary 2-31
 - Phone Book Entry 2-33
 - Record Timer Settings 8-18
 - Re-entering in T9 Input Mode 2-18
 - Still Images 12-10
 - Template (Graphic Mail) 5-17
 - Templates (Common Phrases) 2-16, 2-31
 - Text 2-15
 - URL (Bookmark) 6-19
 - Videos 12-11
 - View Timer Settings 8-18
- Edit Still Images 12-10
 - Brightness 12-18
 - Change Size 12-18
 - Character Stamp 12-10
 - Correct Backlight 12-18
 - Frame 12-10
 - Marker Stamp 12-10

- Refresh Skin Tone 12-18
- Retouch 12-18
- Rotate 12-18
- Trim away 12-11
- Edit Videos 12-11
- Emission OFF Mode 4-6
- Emotion/Keyword 14-15
- Emotion-Expressing Mail 5-6
- Enter URL 6-3, 6-7
 - Delete Records 6-17

F

- FeliCa Mark 1-3
 - IC Card Authentication 4-5
 - IC Card Illumination 14-28
 - Osaifu-Keitai® 11-2
- Flash Sound Effect 14-18
- Font 14-4
- Font Size (Internet) 14-18
- Font Size (Mail) 14-16
- Font Size (S! Info Channel) 14-25
- Forward (Message) 5-21
- Forward Ring Tone 14-29
- Forwarding Image
(Phone Book) 14-11
- Frame 7-13, 12-10

G

- Global Roaming 3-15



Call Japan and Other Countries	3-15
Call within the Same Country	3-15
Settings	14-14
Graphic Mail	
Cancel Effects	5-17
Create	5-4
Create Automatically	5-17
Create from a Template	5-17
Delete Templates	5-17
Edit a Template	5-17
Save Template	5-17
Group Calling	3-22
Group Setting (Phone Book)	14-11
Ring Tone/Image	2-24

H

Handset Parts	1-2
Handsfree	3-19
Hands-free Switch (Video Call) ..	14-13
Header/Signature	14-15, 14-16
Headset Mic. Setting	14-10
Headset SW to Dial	14-10
Headset Usage Setting	14-10
Holidays	11-10
Hyper Clear Voice	3-19

I

IC Card Authentication	4-5
Activate	4-5

Register	4-5
IC Card Illumination	14-28
Icon Always Show (Camera)	14-22
Icon Always Show (TV)	14-20
Icons Setting	14-7
Illumination	14-8
Illumination in Talk	14-12
Image	
Capture	7-6
Edit	12-10
Image Display Mode	14-5
Incoming Call Image	14-8
Incoming Message Image	14-8
Info Notice Setting	14-9
Infrared	13-2
Authentication Password	13-3
Receive All	13-4
Receive One File	13-3
Send All Ir Data	13-3
Send One File	13-3
Infrared Port	1-3
Initial Setup	1-26
Initialize	14-31
Initialized Browser	14-18
Input Mode	14-26
Insertion & Removal	
Battery	1-22
Memory Card	12-13
USIM Card	1-21

Interface Settings	14-28
Internal Antenna	1-2
International Calls	3-4
Enter " + "	3-18
Internet	6-2
Access History	6-3, 6-7
Connect	6-3, 6-6
Enter URL	6-3, 6-7
Home	6-16
Page Operations	6-10
Quick Search	6-18
Reload	6-17
Send URL by Mail	6-17
Settings	14-18
Interval/Number	14-22
Int'l Dial Assistance	14-12

J

JAN Code	11-19
-----------------------	-------

K

Keypad Lock	4-4
Setting	4-4
Unlock Temporarily	4-4
Keypad Sound	14-10

L

Landscape View	1-7
Language (言語選択)	14-5



Life History Viewer	11-7
Display setting	11-24
Reload	11-25
Light	1-2
Lock	
Dial Lock	4-3
IC Card Lock	11-3
Keypad Lock	4-4
Original Lock	4-3
Remote Lock	11-4
Secure Remote Lock	4-5

M

Mail	5-2
Add Folder	5-20
Auto-sort	5-11
Delete	5-20
Delete All Reports	5-20
Delete Attached Files	5-20
Delete Folder	5-21
Delete Read	5-20
Draft	5-21
Edit	5-21
Filter	5-22
Folder Lock	5-12
Forward	5-21
Mail Box Lock	5-12
Mail Windows	5-10
Message Folders	5-9
Move	5-19
Number of Messages	5-21

Protect	5-19
Search Mail	5-22
Secret Folders	5-12
Settings	14-15
Sort	5-22
Sort Folder	5-20
Tomomato-Mail	5-11
Mail List Disp.	14-16
Mail Ring Time	14-8
Mail Setting	14-15
Main Menu	2-2
Change Theme	2-29
Manner Mode	1-28
Manner Mode Set	14-9
Manner Release Time	14-9
Manner Start Time	14-9
Original	14-9
Manufacture Number	14-18
Map Setting	14-28
Map URL Settings	14-29
Marker Stamp	12-10
Melody Playback	
Playlist	12-8
Set Repeat Play	12-18
Memory Card	12-13
Access Data	12-14
Access Files	12-3
Check & Repair	12-20
Check Available Memory Space	12-19
Copy Data from Handset	12-15

Copy Data to Handset	12-15
Delete Data	12-20
DPOF setting	12-16
Folders & Files	15-41
Format	12-14
Insert & Remove	12-13
Transfer WMA Data	9-4

Memory Space (Memory info)

Bookmarks	6-19
Camera	7-16
Data Folder	12-19
Memory Card	12-19
Messages	5-21
Music	9-11
Number of Saved Pages	6-20
Phone Book	2-33
S! Appli	9-12
Schedules	11-25
Server Mail Memory	5-19

Menu Display Set

Menu List	15-20
Communication Style	15-20
Share Style	15-36
Touch Style	15-37

Message Download

Missed Calls

Mobile Widget

Change Position of widgets	10-9
Delete from Desktop Page	10-9
Downloading Contents	10-3
Paste Contents	10-3



Place widgets in Foreground or	
Background	10-9
Settings	14-24
Toggle Page	10-2
Update Display	10-9
Use	10-2
Modem	13-10
Move	
Bookmarks	6-19
Files	12-12
Messages	5-19
Multitask	2-10
Activate Another Function	2-10
Combinations	15-2
Toggle Functions	2-11
Music Player (Video Player)	9-2
Playback Windows	9-3
Settings	14-23
My Phone Number	1-30
N	
Net Access	14-23
Network Information	1-26
Network Password	1-29
Network Status	1-30
Neuropointer	1-15
Neuropointer (Setting)	14-26
Noise Reduction	14-12
Notify Caller ID	3-18

Number of Entries	
Bookmarks	6-19
Events	11-25
Phone Book Entries	2-33
Saved Messages	5-21
NW Search Mode	14-14

O

One Seg Digital TV	8-2
Open Inbox Messages	5-6
Open New Messages	5-6
Optional Services	3-16
Original Animation	12-7
Original Lock	4-3
Customize	4-4
Settings	4-3
Original Manner Mode	14-9
Original Menu	2-3, 14-7
Osaifu-Keitai®	11-2
Activate Lifestyle-Appli	11-3
Download Lifestyle-Appli	11-2
Restrict Use	11-3
Settings	14-28
Use	11-3
Own Dictionary	2-16
Delete	2-32
Edit	2-31

P

Panoramic Shooting	7-13
Pause Dial	3-19, 14-11
PC Connection	13-9
Access Memory Card Data	13-9
Packet Transmission	13-10
USB Mode Setting	13-9
PC Site Browser	6-6
Change Disp. Mode	6-16
Windows	6-6
Phone Book	
Access Entries from Other Functions	2-23
Change Entry Number	2-32
Change Index Tab	2-32
Check Number of Entries	2-33
Copy	2-33
Copy to USIM Card	2-25
Create Entries	2-21
Create Entries from Other Functions	2-21
Delete Entries	2-34
Delete Items	2-34
Dial	2-22
Edit an Entry	2-33
Group Setting	14-11
Read Map	2-33
Restrictions	2-25
Ring Tone/Image	2-24
S! Addressbook Back-up	2-27
Save from Scanned Data	11-27
Search	2-22



Send Entries by Mail	2-34
Set Incoming Image	2-21
Set Preferred Search Method	14-11
Set Secret	2-25
PIN Lock & Cancellation	1-20
PIN1/PIN2	1-20
Change PIN1/PIN2	4-2
PIN1 Code Entry Set	4-2
Place Calls on Hold	3-18
Play	
Answering Machine	3-6
Music	9-5
Playlist	9-7
Recorded Program	8-11
Voice Announcement	14-10
Voice Mail	3-17
Voice Memo	3-6
Play Streaming	6-11
Playlist (Songs)	9-6
Add Music	9-11
Cancel Playlist Songs	9-11
Create	9-6
Delete	9-12
Play	9-7
Sort Playlist	9-11
PLMN Setting	14-14
Power On/Off	1-26
Prefix Numbers	3-18
Prefix Setting	14-11
Privacy Angle	14-5

Profile	13-14
Copy	13-14
Reset	13-14
Setting	14-30
Program Guide	8-9

Q

QR Code	11-19
Quality Alarm	14-12
Quick Album	12-6
Quick Info Setting	14-5
Quick Search	5-22, 6-18, 11-25
Quick Silent	14-9

R

Read Out Message	5-18
Read Out Setting	14-16
Receive & Open Messages	5-6
Manually Retrieve Messages	5-18
Open Inbox Messages	5-6
Open New Messages	5-6
Read Out Message	5-18
Reply	5-7
Retrieve Complete S! Mail	5-18
Save Attachments	5-13
Use Mail List	5-7
Received Calls	3-11
Receiving Setting	14-16
Reconnect Signal	14-12

Record at Low Battery	14-21
Record Sound	
Sound without Video (Voice Mode)	7-15
Voice Announce	14-10
Voice Memo	3-5, 11-15
Record Timer	8-14
Record Videos	7-9
Auto Timer	7-13
Chance Capture	7-14
Speed Movie	7-14
Voice Mode	7-15
Redial	3-11
Register S! Quick News	
Contents	10-5
Reject Calls w/o Caller ID	4-6
Reject Unknown	4-6
Remote Control Numbers	14-20
Reply to Messages	5-7
Reset	
Blog/Mail Member List Name	5-16
Channel Settings	14-21
Confirmation Window	
(Data Broadcasts)	14-21
Desktop Icons	2-29
Folder Name (Common Phrases)	2-31
Handset	14-31
Holidays	11-25
Mail Settings	14-16
Memory Card	12-14
My Phone Number	1-30



Index

Original Menu	14-7	Delete Synchronize Log	2-34	Bookmarks	6-13
PC Site Browser Settings	14-18	Synchronization Type	2-27	Events	11-9
S! Appli Settings	14-23	Use	2-27	Holidays	11-10
S! Quick News Contents	14-24	S! Appli	9-8	Own Dictionary	2-16
SMS Center Selection	14-17	Activate	9-9	Phone Book Entries	2-21
Total Call Cost	3-21	Delete	9-12	S! Quick News	10-5
Total Call Time	3-20	Download	9-8	Saved Pages	6-14
TV Settings	14-21	Settings	14-23	Tasks	11-12
WLAN Setting	14-30	S! GPS Navi	11-5	Templates	2-16
Yahoo! Keitai Settings	14-18	Add to Phonebook	11-24	Text Memos	11-14
Reset (Mail)	14-16	Current Location	11-5	Tomo-Den	3-13
Reset (S! Appli)	14-23	Location Logs	11-24	TV Links	8-17
Reset (Yahoo! Keitai)	14-18	Navi Appli	11-5	Saved Pages	6-14
Reset Channel Setting	14-21	Settings	14-28	Delete	6-20
Reset PC Site Brw. Set	14-18	S! Info Channel	10-6	Number of Pages	6-20
Reset Settings	14-31	Check Latest Information	10-6	Open	6-14
Reset Storage Area (TV)	14-21	Get Latest Contents	10-9	Protect	6-20
Reset Total Cost	3-21	Save File	10-9	Save	6-14
Reset Total Duration	3-20	Settings	14-25	Schedule (Events)	11-9
Reset TV Settings	14-21	Subscribe for Service	10-6	Add Holidays	11-10
Reset WLAN Setting	14-30	Weather Indicators	10-6	Check	11-10
Retrieve New	5-18	S! Information Notif.	14-25	Copy	11-25
Ring Volume	14-7	S! Quick News	10-5	Delete	11-11, 11-25
		Check Updated Information	10-5	Edit	11-25
		Delete Registered News	10-9	Number of Schedules	11-25
		Manually Update	10-9	Reset Holiday	11-25
		Register News	10-5	Save	11-9
		Settings	14-24	Save a Text Memo to Schedule	11-26
		Save		Windows	11-9
		Blog/Mail Member List	5-4	Screen Effect	14-5
		Bluetooth®	13-6	Script Settings	14-18

S

S! Addressbook Back-up	2-27
Auto Synchronize	14-11
Check Settings	14-11
Check Synchronize Log	2-28



Scroll (Internet)	14-18	Set Main Time	14-2	SMS Center Selection	14-17
Scroll (Mail)	14-16	Set Max Cost Limit	14-13	SMS Settings	14-15
Search		Set Mute Seconds	4-6	Software Update	15-4
Messages in a Folder	5-22	Set Ringtone	14-8	Songs	
Phone Book	2-22	From Data Folder	12-17	BGM playback	9-10
Songs	9-11	Set Sub Clock	14-2	Bluetooth®	13-7
Secret Data		Setting When Folded	14-12	Download	9-4
Phone Book Entries	2-25	Share Style	1-6	Effect	9-10
Schedule	11-10	Share Style Settings	14-27	Equalizer	9-10
Secret Data Only Mode	4-7	Shoot Framed Images	7-13	Memory Info	9-11
Secret Folders	4-7	Shooting		Play	9-5
Secret Mode	4-7	Auto Timer	7-13	Playlist	9-6
Secure Remote Lock	4-5	Blog Upload	7-16	Repeat Setting	9-10
Security Code	1-29	Chance Capture	7-14	Resume Play	9-10
Select Image (Video Call)	14-13	Continuous Shooting	7-12	Search	9-11
Select Microphone	14-10	Frame	7-13	Set as Ringtone	9-11
Select Network	14-14	Panoramic Shooting	7-13	Sort	9-11
Send Location Info	14-29	Smile Mode	7-12	Streaming Music and Video	6-11
Send Messages	5-3	Speed Movie	7-14	Transfer From PC	9-4
Request Delivery Report	5-16	Still Images	7-6	Sort (Change Order)	
Send Referer	14-18	Videos	7-9	Booked Programs	8-19
Server Mail	5-7	Shortcut-Key Setting	14-26	Desktop Icons	2-29
Delete	5-19	Shutter Sound	14-22	Files	12-17
Forward	5-18	Simple Menu	2-29	Folders (Bookmark)	6-19
Mail List	5-7, 5-18	Smile Level	14-22	Folders (Mail)	5-20
Set Hold Tone	14-12	Smile Mode	7-12	Messages	5-22
Set Image Disp.		SMS		Original Menu Items	14-7
(S! Quick News)	14-24	Receive	5-6	Playlist Songs	9-11
Set Image Disp. (Video Player) ...	14-23	Send	5-5	Songs	9-11
				Tasks	11-26
				Sound/Vib Settings	14-23



Specifications	15-38	Common Phrases (Templates)	2-15	Save from Scanned Data	11-28
Speed Movie	7-14	Copy	2-15	Sort	11-26
Split Landscape View	1-7	Correction	2-15	Text Reader	11-21
Standby Disp. Set. (Mobile Widget)	14-24	Cut	2-15	Check Scanned Text	11-22
Standby Setting (Weather Indicators)	14-25	Dakuten (`) & Handakuten (`)	2-15	Delete Scanned Data	11-28
Standby Settings (S! Quick News)	14-24	Deletion	2-15	Edit Scanned Text	11-27
Start Attachment (auto)	14-16	Emoticons	2-15	NEGA/POSI Mode	11-27
Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable	x, 1-30	Key Assignments	15-10	Scan	11-22
Storage Location (Camera)	14-22	Kuten Code List	15-13	Scan Modes	11-21
Style Mode Settings	14-3	Kuten Codes	2-31	Text Scanning Window	11-21
Sub-address Setting	14-11	Line Feed	2-30	Time Shift Playback	8-7
Subtitles	14-20	Lower Case	2-15	Time Shift Setup	14-21
		Lower Case & Upper Case	2-30	Time-out to Search	14-29
		Overwrite & Insert Modes	2-30	To Do List (Tasks)	11-12
		Paste	2-15	Change Order	11-26
		Pictographs	2-15	Check	11-12
		Quote Data	2-31	Delete	11-13, 11-26
		Settings	14-26	Save	11-12
		Single-byte & Double-byte	2-30	Set Status	11-26
		Space	2-30	Tomo-Den	3-13
		Split Windows	2-13	Cancel Entries	3-21
		Symbols	2-15	Dial	3-13
		T9 Input Mode	2-17	Save Entries	3-13
		Text Entry Window	2-12	Send Messages	3-13
		Text Input Methods	2-13	Tomomato-Mail	5-11
		Use Dictionary	2-30	Touch Menu	2-3
		Word Prediction	2-13	Touch Panel	1-9
Text Memo	11-14			Pallet	1-12
Check Information	11-26			Touch Operation Icons	1-11
Delete	11-14, 11-26			Touchkeys	1-13
Save	11-14				

T

T9 Change Mode	14-26
T9 Input Mode	2-17
Templates (Common Phrases)	
Delete	2-31
Edit	2-16, 2-31
Insert	2-15
Text Entry	2-12
2-touch Mode	2-17
5-touch Mode	2-13
Alphanumerics, Numbers & Katakana ..	2-15
Character Entry Modes	2-13



- Touch Panel Setting 14-27
- Touch Style 1-6
- Trim away (Still Image) 12-11
- Troubleshooting 15-6
- TV 8-2
 - Brightness 8-16
 - Channel Settings 8-3
 - Data Broadcasts 8-8
 - Main/Sub Sound 8-16
 - Program Guide 8-9
 - Program Info 8-16
 - Record 8-11
 - Record Timer 8-14
 - Settings 14-20
 - Sound Switch 8-16
 - Time Shift Playback 8-7
 - View Timer 8-14
 - Watch 8-6
 - Windows 8-4
- TV Antenna 8-3
- TV Effect 14-20
- TV Link
 - Delete 8-17
 - Number of TV Links 8-17
 - Save 8-17
 - Show Details 8-17
- TV Power Saving 14-20

- Data Broadcast 8-16
- Life History Viewer 11-25
- S! Quick News List 10-9
- Server Mail List 5-7, 5-18
- Web Page 6-17
- USB Mode Setting 13-9
- USIM Card 1-19
 - Copy Phone Book Entries 2-25, 2-33
 - Copy SMS Messages 5-20
 - Delete Phone Book Entries 2-34
 - Delete SMS Messages 5-20
 - Insertion & Removal 1-21
 - PINs 1-20

V

- Vibrator 14-8
- Voice Call 3-8
 - Brightness 3-19
 - Color Mode Set 3-20
 - Display Light 3-20
 - Hyper Clear Voice 3-19
 - Settings 14-13
 - Visual Prefer. 3-19
 - White Balance 3-19
 - Windows 3-8
- Videos
 - Playlist 12-8
 - Streaming Video 6-11
- View Timer 8-14
- Viewer Settings 14-5

U

Update

- Voice Announce 14-10
- Voice Call 3-3
 - Hyper Clear Voice 3-19
 - Send Touch Tones 3-19
- Voice Mail 3-16
 - Missed Call Notification 3-17
 - Play Messages 3-17
- Voice Memo 3-5, 11-15
 - Auto Voice Memo 14-12
 - Play/Delete Messages 3-6, 3-20
 - Record the Other Party's Voice 3-5
 - Record Your Voice 11-15

W

- Wallpaper (Stand-by Display) 14-3
 - Image in Data Folder 12-17
 - Recorded Video 7-17
 - Shot Still Image 7-17
 - Video in Data Folder 12-17
- Warning Messages 14-19
- Warranty 15-56
- Weather Indicators 10-6
 - Indicator List 15-19
 - Manual Update 10-10
 - Settings 14-25
 - Subscribe for Service 10-6
- Weather Notif. 14-25
- Weather Update 14-25
- WLAN 13-11
 - Access Point Settings 13-13



Display Information	13-15
Easy Connecting (AOSS)	13-12
Easy Connecting (WPS)	13-12
Manual Setup	13-13
Search & Connect to Priority Connections	13-14
Search Access Points	13-13
WLAN (ON/OFF)	13-11
WLAN Setting	14-30
WLAN/3G Change Setting	14-30
Word Prediction	2-13, 14-26
Write Personal Information	14-23
Write/Del User Data	14-23

Y

Yahoo! Keitai	6-3
Switch to PC	6-16



Warranty & After Sales Service

Warranty

A warranty card is included with 931N.

- Check that the store name and purchase date sections have been filled correctly.
- Read the card carefully and store it in a safe place.
- See the card for the warranty period.

After Sales Service

Refer to “Troubleshooting” (P. 15-6) before submitting your handset for repair.

If problems still persist, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance of your area (P. 15-57), or consult with your nearest SoftBank shop.

Provide us with detailed information of your problems.

- Repair within the warranty period is carried out in accordance with the conditions of the warranty.
- Repair after the warranty period is carried out if possible, and the owner of handset is responsible for any repair costs.

Note

- SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages incurred by you or third parties for failed calls, etc. due to failure or malfunction of this product.
- Data and settings you saved may be lost or altered as a result of failure or repair of handset. It is recommended that you keep a backup copy of important data (e.g. Phone Book entries, image and sound files). SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages due to the loss or alteration of handset data.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may constitute a violation of Radio Law. Your handset will not be accepted for repairs if it has been modified.

Tip

- For information on after sales service, contact your nearest SoftBank shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 15-57).



Customer Service

If you have any questions about SoftBank handsets or services, call General Information.
For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial +81-3-5351-3491 (Make sure to dial the correct number. International charges will apply.)

■ Call These Numbers Toll Free from Landlines

Subscription Area	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-250-113

SoftBank 931N User Guide

January 2010, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information,
please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 931N

Manufacturer: NEC Corporation

MDT-000128-EAA0